##  <br> <br> A <br> <br> A <br> <br> GRAMMAR OF <br> <br> GRAMMAR OF THE TIBETAN THE TIBETAN LANGUAGE

 LANGUAGE}HERBERT BRUCE HANNAH

# A <br> GRAMMAR <br> OF THE <br> TIBETAN LANGUAGE <br> Literary and Colloquial 

With copious Illustrations, and treating fully of Spelling, Pronunciation and the Construction of the Verb, and including Appendices of the various forms of the Verb

HERBERT BRUCE HANNAH, Esq.,

Barrister-at-Law, and Adzocate of the High Conrt, Calcutta

## MOTILAL BANARSIDASS

Indological Publishers and Booksellers
Head Office : bungalow road, Jawahar nagar, delhi-7
Branches : 1. CHOWK, VARANASI-I (U.P.) 2. ASHOK RAJPATH, PATNA-4 (BIHAR)

First Edition : Calcutta, 1912
Reprinted : Delhi, 1978
(Cloth)
Price $\$ 6.25$ (Paper)

Printed in India
by shantilal jain at shri jainendra press, a-45, phase-i, industrial area, naraina, new delhi-28, and published by narendra prakash jain, for motilal banarsidass, bungalow road, jawahar nagar, delhi-7

## DEDICATED

TO
E. DENISON ROSS,

TO WHOSE INTEREST IN TIBETAN IT IS DUE THAT THIS
LANGUAGE HAS FOR THE FIRST TLME BEEN INTRODECED INTO THE CURRICULUM OF A UNIVERSITY.

## PREFACE.

For many centuries Tibet has been a terra incognita-little or nothing being known about it, as regards either its physical conditions or its inner life.

Not, indeed, till a few years ago, when a British force entered Lhasa, the " Place of the minor gods," was the veil withdrawn; and even then the withdrawal was only partial, transient, and very local.

As for the language, though there have been several gallant attempts to plunge into the labyrinthine obscurities of its construction-notably on the part of Alexander Csoma de Körös in 1834 and subsequently of H. A. Jäschke-that also, it must be confessed, remains more or less a mystery; for no one, I take it, is likely to aver that the present state of our knowledge on the subject is at all satisfactory.

Much, no doubt, has been contributed by the more recent labours of Rāi Sarat Chandra Dās Bahādur, Mr. Vincent Henderson, the Rev. Edward Amundsen, and Mr. C. A. Bell, I.G.S. But, in spite of all, even they, and every one else who has taken up the study, will admit that, wherever one treads, the ground still feels uncomfortably shaky, especially in regard to certain aspects of the so-called verb; wherever he gropes there is something that seems ever to elude him; and, amid the weird philological phantoms that flit uncertainly around in the prevailing gloom, his constant cry, I feel very sure, is still one for more light.

I do not for one moment claim for this grammar the character of a scientific work. Many years ago when I was studying the language in Darjeeling, uuder Käzi Dawa Sam Düp-a particularly intelligent and scholarly Tibetan-it was my habit during the course of my morning's lesson to make notes of what I then learnt. After a time these notes became so numerous that for my own convenience I was obliged to reduce them to some degree of order. These ordered notes themselves growing in bulk, the idea occurred to me that I might just as well put them into the form of a book, and this I did-the result being a MS which has long lain by me, but which is now about to be published.

It is merely another attempt on the part of one who has tried

Up to a certain stage the romanized equivalent of the Tibetan is given : but after that the student is left to discern the proper pronunciation by means of his own unaided skill.

Here it may interest others as well as students of Tibetan to mention that Oh, the jewel in the lotus! Lieutenant-Colonel Waddell's
 $p \ddot{\prime}$ 'me $h \bar{u} m, h r i$, is wholly inadequate and indeed inaccurate.
$O m$ does not mean $O h$ at all, and the phrase as a whole, is nuch deeper and more complex in its signification than the above rendering would imply.

Om alone is an all-embracing expression, and stands mystically for the incarnation of the Deity, or rather for the immanence of the Supreme Being in, as well as for Its transcendence above, the phenomenal or existent world, so far as the terms 'immanence' and 'transcendence' are applicable to the relations subsisting between that world and Pure Subsistence. In other words, it stands for the never-ending kosmic process of the self-effacing involution of Paramâtman, or Brahman, into Existence, or the world of Matter, and Its self-expressing evolution through Matter back to Substantial Being. This process, indeed, constitutes the famous so-called "Wheel of Life" in its Kosmic aspect.

The formula may be roughly analysed thus :-
$\mathrm{W}^{\circ}$ - The source of all speech
 $\left\{\begin{array}{c}\text { Embodiment } \\ \text { of the } \\ \text { Trinity } .\end{array}\right.$

д둥 - Wish-granting jewel ; symbolical of temporal blessings; also of the Psychical Atman or Spiritual Ego.

च. spiritual re-birth.

呂• - It is, or I am, omnipresent.
Эิㅇ Sct; the universal Life Principle, or Satyasya Satyam of the Upanishads i.c., the Houmenal Reality underlying Empirical Reality.

The entire phrase, therefore, merely in this one limited aspect of its meaning (and it may be read in many other ways) signifies-_" The Embodiment of the Trinity, or Incarnation of Deity, is my wish-granting jewel in the lotus of spiritual rebirth"; the idea apparently being that since the Kosmical Atman, or Brahman, i.e. the first or inner principle of the universe, and the Psychical Ātman, or inner principle of individual Man, are essentially one and the same, our hope of spiritual rebirth is assured in and by the fact of the eternal subsistence of Brahman and the ceaselessness of the kosmic process above referred to-human re-incarnation being a microcosmic effect, or aspect, of the macrocosmic law.

Hence, whenever a lama is heard droning out his $O m$ mañi $p \vec{a}$ ' me $h \bar{u} m$, he is really reciting his version of one of the profoundest creeds known to philosophy-but in most cases probably with an artless ignorance that is equally profound.

Another mistake that one often meets with, especially in Theosophical literature, is that which represents the word Devachan as signifying The dwelling of the gods, doubtless from some vague idea that it is derived from the Perso-Hindustāni words Dewa, 'a god,' and Khān, or Khäneh, 'a dwelling-house.' It is really the Tibetan word $\overline{\boxed{\circ}} \cdot \mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{\sigma g}$ De-wa chän, meaning ' Blissful.'

No one will be better pleased than myself to see any errors in this book corrected, or doubts removed, by competent critics. I am conscious that there must be errors, and I know there are doubts; while the desire of all who are interested in the language cannot but be to see our knowledge of it advanced.

My acknowledgments are due to the grammarians already named, and especially to Mr. Henderson and Mr. Bell, whose respective manuals and vocabularies marked a considerable advance upon the grammars that they supplemented and, if I may say so, displaced. The earlier grammars by Csoma de Körös and Jäschke were concerned for the most part, if not solely, with archaic classical Tibetan. The former's " Colloquial Phrases" were 'anything but what would now be regarded as colloquial; while Jäschke's colloquial was that of Western Tibet. These grammars, therefore, were not altogether satisfactory for the purposes of modern requirements. Moreover, the manner in which they dealt with the mysteries of the verb left much to be desired. As for the late Rev. Graham Sandberg's grammar, though very elaborate and learned,
it did not really constitute a bar to the successful appearance of the Manuals above alluded to. Indeed it may perhaps be said that not until the publication of Mr. Bell's book were the true forms and func-
 with anything like precision and lucidity.

I desire also to acknowledge my obligations to the Hon'ble ViceChancellor (Sir Ashutosh Mukerji, Kt.) and Syndicate of the Calcutta University, under whose auspices this contribution to the study of Tibetan has attained the honour and privilege of publication.

Lastly, my grateful thanks are also due to Dr. and Mrs. Denison Ross for much kindness and help accorded from time to time; and perhaps most of all to my Mūnshi, Kāzi Dawa Sam Dūp, and to Mr. David Macdonald of Kalimpong (probably the first Tibetan scholar in India) who was kind enough to go through the entire MS. and to favour me with his critical comments and general approval.
H. B. H.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS.

## CHAPTER I.

## PRELIMINARY.

Page
$\oint$ I. The $\Pi \mathbb{R}^{\prime} \mathrm{KA}_{\mathrm{A}}-\mathrm{K}^{\prime} \mathrm{A}$ ..... 1
I. The $\prod^{\circ}$ iें KA-li ..... 1
 ..... 3
§ 2. Romanized Equivalents ..... 5
§ 3. Phonetic Modifications of Vowels ..... 8
Notes ..... 11
§ 4. The Six Reversed Letters ..... 15
§ 5. The Seven Consonants to which $\approx$ may be subjoined.. ..... 16
$\oint$ 6. The Fourteen Consonants to which $\downarrow$ may be subjoined ..... 17
$\oint$ 7. The Six Consonants to which $\bar{\mp}$ may be subjoined ..... 18
§ 8. The Six Silent Consonants to which \& may be subjoined ..... 18
§ 9. The Sixteen Consonants to which ${ }_{\triangleleft}$ may be subjoined ..... 18
§ 10. The Twelve Ra-go Consonants ..... 21
§ 11. The Ten La-go Consonants ..... 21
§ 12. The Twelve Sa-go Consonants ..... 21
§ 13. The Five Prefixes ..... 22
§ 14. Initial Letters and the Prefixes each may take ..... 24
Notes ..... 28
§ 15. Peculiarities of Pronunciation ..... 29
§ 16. The Ten Consonantal Affixes ..... 33
\$ 17. The Eleven Final Duplications ..... 34
§ 18. Colloquial Duplications ..... 37
§ 19. The Tone System ..... 39
§ 20. Writing and Punctuation ..... 45
Page
§ 21. Spelling ..... 50
§ 22. Transliteration ..... 55
§ 23. Use of the Tibetan Dictionary ..... 55
§ 24. Indicative and Differentiating Particles ..... 57
§ 25. The Cases and their Signs ..... 61
I. The Nominative Case ..... 62
II. The Vocative Case ..... 63
III. The Objective or Accusative Case ..... 63
IV. The Genitive Case ..... 63
V. The Dative Case ..... 65
VI. The Agentive Case ..... 67
VII. The Locative Case ..... 69
VIII. The Periodal or Durational Case ..... 71
IX. The Modal Case ..... 73
X. The Ablative Case ..... 75
XI. The Terminative or Transitive Case ..... 77
§ 26. Numerals.

1. The Cardinal Numbers ..... 82
II. The Cardinals according to Alphabetical Enumera- tion ..... 85
Notes :-
2. Pronunciation ..... 86
3. Affixes ..... 86
4. Conjunctions ..... 87
5. The Indefinite Article ..... 87
6. Approximate Numbers ..... 87
7. Ordinal Numbers ..... 88
8. Distributive Numbers ..... 88
9. Aggregates ..... 89
10. Fractions ..... 89
11. Adverbial Cardinal Numbers ..... 90
12. ", Ordinal ..... 91
13. Definite and Indefinite Numerals ..... 91
13 Noun Substantives ..... 93
14. Notation by letters ..... 93

## CHAPTER II.

## ETYMOLOGY.

Page
§ 27. The Definite Article ..... 95
§ 28. The Indefinite Article ..... 99
§ 29. The Noun.
A.-Stricture ..... 101

1. Monosyllables, Dissyllables, and Polysyllables ..... 101
2. The affix 쥬무 ..... 104
3. The affix 5े5 ..... 104
4. The affix 행 ..... 106
5. The affix च춤 ..... 106
6. Abstract Nouns ..... 106
B.-Inflexion
7. Gender ..... 107
8. Number ..... 109
9. Case ..... 111
I. Noun ending in a Vowel ..... 111
II. ,, ,, , 所 or $\left[^{\circ}\right.$ ..... 115
III. ,, , , $\boldsymbol{F}^{\circ}, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{\circ}$ or $\mathbb{Z}^{*}$ ..... 116
 ..... 116
§ 30. The Adjective.
I. Form and Place ..... 116
II. Augmenting of Adjectives ..... 127
III. The Comparative Degree ..... 129
IV. The Superlative Degree ..... 131
V. Other Methods of Comparison ..... 134
§ 31. The Pronoun.
I. Personal Pronouns ..... 135
II. Declension of Personal Pronouns ..... 138
III. The Reflexive Pronouns ..... 140
IV. Compounds in $\mathbf{\Sigma 匚}^{\circ}$ Rang ..... 143
Page
V．Possessive Pronouns
1．Ordinary Personal Pronouns ..... 144
2．Reflexive Possessive Pronouns ..... 145
VI．Demonstrative Pronouns ..... 147
VII．The Reciprocal Pronoun ..... 150
VIII．Interrogative Pronouns ..... 151
IX．Relative and Correlative Pronouns
A．Relative Pronouns ..... 153
B．Correlative Pronouns ..... 160
X．Indefinite Pronouns ..... 169
§ 32．Adverbs ..... 177
§ 33．Postpositions ..... 194
§ 34．Conjunctions ..... 201
§ 35．W్W゙ㄷ To be ..... 207
 ..... 228
§ 37．凶ิず『 To be ..... 229
§ 38．The Verb．
I．Preliminary ..... 239
II．Roots ..... 239
III．Auxiliary Verbs ..... 243
IV．Auxiliary Particles．
（1）बों，जें，合，etc ..... 244
 ..... 245
（3）बोण ज्रोण ，ग्रेश，etc． ..... 245
（4）₹ं，दे，त्रें ..... 246
（5）対，बิन，बิॅ ..... 247
6）$\sqrt[\pi]{ }$ N and $\square \mathbb{N}$ ..... 248
（7） $\operatorname{q}^{\text {as }}$ ..... 249
（8）종 ..... 249
（9）ஏ ..... 251
（10）ه゚ ..... 252
Page
(11) 哥 ..... 254
(12) $\mathfrak{\chi}$ ..... 255
(13) $5^{\circ}$ ..... 255
(14) 5, 5, ㄷ, 5, 정, 마 ..... 257
 ..... 258
(16) रुँ ..... 259
 ..... 259
V. Moods and Tenses.
A.-Infinitive Mood ..... 259
B.-The Supine ..... 263
C.-The Verbal Noun ..... 265
D.-Participles ..... 267
E.-Gerunds ..... 271
F.-Indicative Mood.
(a) Present ..... 272
(b) Imperfect ..... 275
(c) Perfect ..... 276
(d) Past Indefinite ..... 277
(e) Pluperfect ..... 279
( $f$ ) Future ..... 281
G. -Subjunctive and Conditional Moods ..... 283
H.--Potential Mood ..... 285
I. -Probability ..... 288
J. -Hortative Mood ..... 290
K.-Purposive Mood ..... 292
L.-Precative Mood ..... 292
M.-Permissive Mood ..... 293
N.-Optative Mood ..... 294
O.-Imperative Mood ..... 296
VI. The Passive Voice ..... 299
VII. Compound Verbs ..... 300
VIII. Verbs of becoming, growing, changing, etc. ..... 303
IX. Inceptives ..... 303
X. Imminence ..... 304
Page
XI．Continuatives ..... 304
XII．Finality or Accomplishment ..... 305
XIII．Desideratives ..... 305
XIV．Frequentatives ..... 306
XV．Use of the Perfect Root in the Colloquial ..... 307
CHAPTER III．
39．Syntax ..... 308
APPENDIX of CONJUGATIONS．
I．Colloqulal 式ร゙ฉ To be present ；To exist ；To be ..... 310
II．Litterary Ditto ..... 315
III．Colloquial খิब̄『 To be ．． ..... 320
IV．Literary Ditto ..... 325
 ..... 331
VI．Active，Transitive，4－Rooted Colloquial Verb बだぢか To send ..... 331
VII．Literary Ditto ..... 340
VIII．Passive，4－Rooted Colloquial Verb aifich To be sent ..... 349
 see ..... 354
X．Neuter，one－Rooted Colloquial Verb $5 \mathbb{A R} \mathbb{R}^{\circ}{ }^{\circ}$ To be glad，To rejoice ..... 360
XI．Literary Ditto ..... 361
XII．Passive，4－Rooted Literary Verb aif5 $5^{\circ}$ or  ..... 368
XIII．Active，2－Rooted Colloquial Verb R ..... 371
XIV．Literary Ditto ..... 378
XV．2－Rooted Literary Verb Raty ${ }^{\prime \prime}$＇To become，etc． ..... 383Page
XVI. Active, 4-Rooted Colloquial Verb 5is. To do, To make, etc. ..... 387
XVII. Literary Ditto ..... 389
XVIII. Passive, 4-Rooted Colloquial Verb 5ityor सेढీద To be made, To be done, etc.393
XIX. Passive, 4-Rooted Litmrary Verb 5『゚ To be made, To be done, etc... ..... 394
 made, or done, etc. ..... 395

## Tibetan Grammar.

## CHAPTER I.

PRELIMINARY.
§ 1.-The $\pi^{\circ} \mathbb{A}^{\bullet} K a-K^{\prime} a$, or Ttbetan Graphio Sybtim.


| Letter. | Name. | Remarks. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\Pi$ | $\mathbf{K a}$ | Like $K$ in the Urdu word Kab, When. A compact sound. |
| $\ldots$ | $K^{\prime} \mathbf{a}$ | $K h$, forcibly aspirated. Like the Persian $\dot{\text { c }} \boldsymbol{K} h$. |
| 4 | Ga | Pronounced softly, from low down in the throat, rather more sharply than hard English $G$, and in a way that to English ears seems to give it the sound of $K$. |
| E | Nga | Like the sound of $n g$ in the English word sing. It often begins a word in Tibetan. As a final, often represented by a superscribed o, called o o Lä'-kOr, or o cipher. |
| J | Cna | Like the Ch in charge. A compact sound. |
| あ | Ch'a | Chha. A forcibly aspirated ch. |
| $E$ | $\mathbf{J a}, \mathbf{J} \mathbf{a}$ | Like the $J$ in jar. As an initial it is slightly as pirated, and may be pronounced like $\delta \mathrm{ch}$. |

N.B.-For the powers of these letters, as represented by their romenized equivalents, see § 2.

| Letter. | Name. | Remarks. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 3 | Nya | Like the combined sound of the nya in lanyard. |
| 5 | Ta | A compact dental sound, like the Urdu or Persian $\because$, or the Bengali $\sigma$. |
| 9 | T'a | Also dental, but forcibly aspirated. |
| 5 | Da | This is not exactly a dental $d$, nor is it an aspirated $d$, as sometimes described, but a dental sound rather like the th in think, as pronounced by some Irishmen ; or like the Bengali $\bar{F}$, but with a strong similarity to a dental $t$. A soft sound. |
| 9 | Na | A dental $N$, softly sounded. |
| $\pm$ | Pa | English $P$, but more fully and compactly pronounced. |
| 24 | P'a | Not $P h$ (i.e. $F$, or $F h$ ), but $P-h$. A strong aspirate. |
| $\square$ | Ba | Sharper than the English $B$, and rather like $P$, but softer than the latter. |
| ฆ | Ma | English $M$, sometimes abbreviated into 0 , written over the initial, and representing final $m$, and called <br>  <br>  Anuswara. |
| ช | Tsa | Like the sound of $T s$, or Russian Tse. A compact sound. |
| お | Te'a | Not $T s h$, but $T s-h$, strongly aspirated. |
| E | Dz'a | Not Dzh, but Dz-h. Aspirated. |
| \% | Wa | English W. |
| 9 | Źhya | Something like the French $J$ in jadis, or Persian ; or Russian Zhē, but with a tendency towards the sound $s h$, and also with the ya sound. Hence, hard $z^{\prime} h y a$, or soft shya. |


| Letter. | Name. | Remarks. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 习 | Za | English Z, but inolining to sound of 8. |
| $R$ | 'a | Spiritus lenis, with a vowel-sound like that in the Urdu word س mas, Enough; but soft and long, as though gently emanating from the throat. words from Sanskrit it is used as a "mora," to denote prosodical length, i.e. a long syllable. |
| W | Ya | English $Y$, as in yard, you, yoke, ye, yes, yiddish, yea. |
| I | Ra | English R, well sounded. |
| ® | La | English $L$, but, at the end of a syllable, sounded either very faintly or not at all, and sometimes changed to $\mathrm{F}^{-} R$. |
| 4 | Sha | Sh. Full, strong sound. |
| N | Sa | S. Full, strong sound, like ss in hiss, but, at the end of a syllable, not sounded at all. |
| 5 | Ha | $H$. Well aspirated. |
| W | A | Like the vowel-sound in the Urdu word $\quad$ Bas, Enough. Pronounced very short: but a barder, fuller and compacter sound than that of $\mathbb{R}^{\circ}$ The sound of $\mathbb{V}^{\circ}$ is inherent in all simple non-final consonants unqualified by any vowel-sign, and in all compound consonants sounding as one, when similarly unqualified. It is not inherent in the consonant $q^{-}$which has a softer and more omanating sound. |

II.-The w্ৰ'ম্' Ā-li, or Vowel-Series, being five vowels, and four vowel-signs. For the purpose of illustrating the signs, one of the vowels, namely, $\mathcal{G Y} A$, which is also regarded as a consonant by Tibetans, is adopted as a basis. Any other consonant, however, would do equally well.

| Letter． | Name． | Remarks． |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 61 | a | Like $a$ in BAs，Enough．Pronunciation short， hard，compact and full．Inherent in all non－ final consonants not qualified by any vowel－signs， and in single－letter and compound－letter syllables sounding as one syllable，when similarly unquali－ fied．Thus，in in $\mathbb{J}^{\circ}$ but not in the final $5^{\circ}$ ．So it is inherent in $\Gamma^{-}$Nas，$I$ ，but not in $\Gamma^{-1}$ Ngo，Face；and in <br>  also ceases to inhere by reason of modifications other than qualifying vowel－signs，as will hereafter be shown．See § 3. |
| （6） | i | Short，like the $i$ in is．The sign is a called मी ${ }^{\circ}$ G＇I－a＇v，The Angle，and it is placed over the letter it modifies．Thus，तो Kyı，A sign of the Genitive Case． |
| NJ | u | Short，like the $u$ in full．The sign is $\checkmark$ called Gairne zinyab－kyu，The hook，and it is placed under the letter it modifies．Thus， $5^{\circ} \mathrm{D}^{\prime} \mathbf{0}, A$ sign of the Terminative Case． |
| ज㇇⺀⿺乀乛 | e | Short，like $a$ in made，or the Italian $e$ ．The sign is a called Rग्गेटतु Ḍeng－bu，The standing stroke，and it is placed over the letter it modifies． Thus，રે•「 RE－RE，each． |
| 湤 | 0 | Short，like the $a$ in for，or rock．The sign is－ called 좡두 $\check{\mathrm{N}} \mathrm{A}-\mathrm{RO}$ ，The horns over the nose，and it is placed over the letter it modifies．，Thus， $\bar{x}$ <br>  <br>  |

§ 2．－The Romanted Equivalents adopted in this work，showing the Powers of the thirty consonants．

| Tibetan Character． | Romanized Equivalent． | Remarls． |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ． | ， | Acute accent，used for instance with $g$ ，when A］GA，is pronounced almost like $k$ ；and with $d$ ，when $\mathcal{F}^{\circ} \mathrm{DA}$ ，is pronounced almost like T．Thus，鳥届 Gong，Price，because it is pronounced nearly like Kowa；but 突 Go， Door，pronounced like the ordinary hard English g．So also $\mathcal{F}^{-}$De，The，That，because it is pronounced almost like dental Te； $\mathfrak{t i s t}$ R气．Dr，The，This，pronounced as dental d． |
| $\cdots$ | $\checkmark$ | This sign，placed over any letter，signifies a raising of the tone． |
| ． | ， | Spiritus lenis，or gentle breathing．It is placed before $c$ ，thus＇$a$ ，to represent $q^{\prime}$ For example，$\downarrow \prod \mathfrak{R}^{\prime} \mathrm{K}^{\prime} \overline{\mathrm{A}}$, Order，Command．For simplicity＇s sake，however，we shall seldom use it．It will never be used to represent $q^{\circ}$ as a prefix． |
| $\cdots$ | ＇ | Spiritus asper，or rough breathing．Thus $\mathbb{P}$ <br>  <br> To carry away． |
| 7 | K | Tonic pitch high． |
| ロ | K＇ | Pitch lower than $K$ ． |
| A1 | G | Pitch deep． |


| Tibetan Character． | Romanized Equivalent． | Remarks． |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 可＇guarded | G | e．g．－저마 Gam，Box，Chest．Pitch higher than g． |
| ［ | Ng | Pitch low；sometimes represented by LÄ＇－KOR，o cipher． |
| 3 | Ch | Pitch very high． |
| ぁ | Ch＇ | Pitch lower than ch． |
| E | J，J＇ | When an initial，represented by $\mathrm{J}^{\prime}$ ．Thus E $J^{\prime} \mathrm{A}, T e a$ ．When it has a prefix，represented by J．Thus，凡EV下̃a Jö－pa，To cling よIEA＇『＇Jì－wa，To come to，To meet，To pay one＇s respects to．Pitoh very low． |
| 3 | Ny | Pitch low． |
| 5 | T | Pitch very high． |
| 9 | T ${ }^{\text {c }}$ | Pitch lower than T． |
| 5 | D́ | Pitch very low． |
| $5^{\circ}$ guarded | D | e．g．－§ Ďo，Stone．Pitch higher than D． |
| $\oint$ | N | Pitch low． |
| 5 | P | Pitch very high． |
| 4 | P＇ | Pitch lower than $P$ ． |
| $\square$ | B，W，v | Pitch very deep． |
| 「＇ando |  |  sometimes placed on top of a letter，and stands for a final $n g$ ，or $m$ ，or $m s$ ．The pitch of $\boldsymbol{\sigma}^{\circ}$ is low． |


| Tibetan Character． | Romanized Equivalent． | Remarke． |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ช＇ | Ts | Pitch high． |
| あ | Ts ${ }^{\text {c }}$ | Pitch lower than Ts． |
| E | Dz | Pitch very low， |
| 「 | W | Pitch low． |
| －9 | 2́hy |  pronounced almost like SHA－mo． |
| 习 | z | e．g．，－ヨロロ $\mathbf{Z}_{\mathrm{A}-\mathrm{wa}_{\mathrm{A}},}$ To eat，pronounced al most like Sa－wa．Pitch very low． |
| 9 | ＇A | When $\mathcal{R}^{\prime}$ is a prefix，it is not transliterated at all in this work．Pitch very low． |
| $w$ | Y | Pitch very low． |
| I | R | Pitch low． |
| ® | L | Lowest pitch of all． |
| 9 | Sh |  |
| N | S | \} Pitch high. |
| 5 | H | Pitch very high． |
| WV | A | Pitch low． |

Note．－The remarks in column 3 regarding Tonic Pitch refer to the Rev．Mr．Amundsen＇s Tone－system．I would，however，advise the student to direct his attention to the compactness or otherwise of his utterance，and to the shortness or length of his vowel－sounds，rather than to Pitch of Tone．See § 19.

Other letters，compound and reversed，are not included in the above tables．They are dealt with in §§ 4 et seq．
§ 3.-Phonetio Modifications of the Five Vowels. These are based on VFr $^{\text {A, as representing any of the thirty consonants. }}$

| Tibetan Sound. | Romanized <br> Equivalent. | Remarks. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 6 | a | Short, hard and compact, as already explained. Ex. म太NNN' K'am, Empire, Realm Pronounced, as regards the vowel-sound, exactly like that of the English word Come. $\mathcal{W}^{\circ}$ differs from $\mathbb{R}^{\circ}$ in that the latter is a long, slow and gentle emanation, while $\mathrm{WV}^{*}$ is uttered forcibly. |
| $\left.\begin{array}{l} \mathrm{w}+\mathrm{R}^{\circ} \\ \mathrm{w}+\square \mathbf{N} \end{array}\right\}$ | a |  Order, Command; ㅁㅋㅋr Lē, A courteous expression. |
| $\left.\begin{array}{c} \mathbf{N V} \\ 2 \\ \mathbf{V N} \\ \mathfrak{F} \end{array}\right\}$ | a | Long, like $a$ in far. Ex. $\prod^{\circ} q^{\cdot}$ K $\bar{A}$-sha,$A$ sort <br>  2 <br>  |
|  | à, ${ }_{\text {a }}$, wà | Long. like the $o$ in corner, or the $a w$ in Bawl, or the Chinese $w \bar{a}$ as in $K w \bar{a} n$, in transliterations from Sanskrit, Indian, Chinese or other foreign languages. Thus, $\bar{F} \cdot \bar{j} \cdot q \cdot x$ Ra-me-shâ-ra, A holy place near Lanka or <br>  <br>  Dâl-Ch'in-b'Àdur, A Mongolian King of Tibet. Or long, like the $a$ in far, in Tibetan <br>  <br>  shaped cap. Or it serves to show that a letter is not a prefix, but an initial. Thus, $55 \mathfrak{N}$ Dana-po, clear, which might other- |


| Tibetan Sound． | Romanized Equivalent． | Remarks． |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\left.\begin{array}{l}W N+9 \\ W N+5\end{array}\right\}$ | a |  district of Tibet south－east of $\mathbf{O}$ and Kong po，which might otherwise have read GX－PO <br>  pa（pronounced ZHYAM－PA）other ；or， $55^{\circ} \mathrm{E}$ Dä＇－pa，Faith． |
| $\left.\begin{array}{l} \mathrm{u}+\mathrm{N}^{\prime} \\ \mathrm{w} \text { +ar } \end{array}\right\}$ | \％ | Long，like $a$ in can＇t，as pronounced by <br>  Pupil：ब্オী |
| జิ | i |  nounced Yim－pa），To be． |
| $\left.\begin{array}{l}\text { witak } \\ \text { wิta } \\ \text { 心ิ＋ar }\end{array}\right\}$ | i | Long，like $i$ in ravine．Ex．qEaparar Jt－pa， To be afraid；बิझr Gif，A sign of the Agen－ <br>  in the midst． |
| (W్ | I | Also long，like $i$ in ravine．Used in translit－ erations from foreign languages．Ex．Fid <br>  <br>  |
| （ิ） | e | Short，like a in made，or Italian e．Ex．दे D́e，The，That． |
|  | ® | Like the preceding，but long．Ex．बसोझा太N GE Devil，Demon，Evil－spirit；ఫે太가 She－ <br>  To absolve． |


| Tibetan Sound． | Romanized Equivalent． | Remarks． |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\left.\begin{array}{l}\text { खे＋क } \\ \text { जे＋5－}\end{array}\right\}$ | e | Short，like e in get．Ex．बेす̄ Cr＇en－po （pronounced Ch＇ем－po），Great，Big，Large ； Sী achieve． |
| ชิ＊ | ai |  mountain on the $N$ ．shore of Lake Mana－ sarowar；ิ．รें Maitri，Love，Friendship； ริฝำ．Tai－ling－ga，The modern Telingana． |
| W్ర ${ }^{\circ}$ | u | Short，like $u$ in pull．Ex： 5 Fin Hor－po， Active ；R习ु Bu，Worm；あु CH＇ס，Water． |
|  | a | Long，like oo in snooze．Ex．$\square$ ģフiviar Žiyo Pa，To sit． |
|  | 0 | Same as preceding．Ex．Ā「：Wai do rys，Azure stone，Lapis lazuli ；$\frac{\circ}{\dagger} \mathrm{Hom}$ ， A terrifying or angry expression． Brutal． |
| $\left.\begin{array}{c} \underset{y}{*}+\infty \\ \underset{y}{*}+5^{\circ} \end{array}\right\}$ | ü | Like $u$ in French une．Ex．$\quad$ 万ुす DUn， Seven；ㅅ्ञु ${ }^{-च}$ Ǩt＇－pa，Thread． |
| $\left.\begin{array}{c} \underset{N}{\prime}+\mathbf{N}^{\circ} \\ \underset{N}{*}+\infty \end{array}\right\}$ | 4 0 | Same as．last，but long．Ex．5太 D＇t， Period，Time ；Wु긔 Y <br> Short，like o in for，or rock．This is the com－ monest $o$ in Tibetan．Ex．反َसㅍ T＇om， |



Notes.
1.-In the above Tabular Statement the sign + in column 1 means "as modified by the addition of." It will be seen that the basic, inherent $\mathrm{KV}^{*} a$ is subject to modifications, not only when quali-
fied by vowel-signs, but also when followed or subjoined by $\mathbb{R}^{\circ}$ ' $a$, or when subjoined by $5^{\circ} H a$, or \& wa-kur, or when followed
 is sometimes represented by the abbreviation $\boldsymbol{7}^{\circ} \operatorname{Ta} \boldsymbol{l o g}-\mathrm{fa}$, i.e.

2.-In words containing those vowel-modifications which are affected by $\mathrm{AP}^{\circ}$ la, the $\mathrm{A}^{\circ}$ when pronounced, should be uttered very softly. Often it is not pronounced at all. e.g., $55^{\circ} \sqrt{\circ}^{\circ}$ NưuL,


Where $\mathbb{a}^{\circ}$, as a final, is followed by the particle $\boldsymbol{\nabla}^{*}$ wa, the latter, in the Colloquial, is often changed into $\mathrm{F}^{-r a}$. e.g.,
 wa, To sacrifice (Honorific form). Sometimes, however, هُ is merely duplicated. See § 18.
3.-In the pronunciation of words containing those vowel-modifications
 $G^{\prime} a$-sa, the following peculiarity should be noted. In the case of monosyllabic words or final syllables ending in one of the above letters, such letter is not exactly pronounced. Yet it is hinted at ; for, just before pronouncing it, the speaker stops short, and, by a sharp contraction of the glottis, forms a kind of innominate sound, which perhaps is best described by reference to the Persian or Arabic $q$ 'ain, or to the curious throat-sound emitted by some Glaswegians when, instead of saying Saturday, they say Se'urday, or instead of saying water, they say wa'er. This emphasized hiatus-sound will be represented by an apostrophe.

 ending in $A T^{\circ} G^{\prime} a$ ，the following rules may be observed ：－
（a）When the syllable forms a word by itself，like छิन्व CHI＇
 （Shog＇），Imperative of UWE＇E Yong－wa，To come，the $\square$ $G^{\prime} a$ should never be pronounced，but only hinted at，in manner above described．
（b）When the syllable in which ㅍ／or and occurs is only one in a word of two or more syllables，and is not the final



 PO，Quick．
（c）Practically the same rules may be observed as regards
 WA，or ゆ゙̣E－WA，To fasten on．

4．－A consonant，having a prefix，but no affix，nor any qualifying vowel－sign，must be supported by the lengthening affix $q^{\prime}$＇$a$ ， which prevents the prefix from being mistaken for an initial letter．Ex．$\nabla^{\prime T} R^{\circ}$ K＇Ā，Order，command，word；ब耳凡＇D＇A， Arrou＇．

5．－$\square^{\cdot} B$ ，is usually pronounced $W$ ，when，in a word of more than one syllable，it is the initial letter of the second or other following syllable，and the final letter of the immediately preceding syllable is either $厶^{\prime} \mathcal{R}^{\circ} 5^{\circ}$ or $\mathbb{R}^{\circ}$ ，or if such preceding syllable does not end in a consonant，but is goverred by inherent $G V^{\circ}$ ，or one of the
vowel-signs. $\boldsymbol{V}^{\circ}$ also takes the sound of $w$ when it is prefixed by $5^{\circ}, D a$, and has no modifying vowel-sign or Yata sign. In the latter case it takes the sound of the modifyng signs. Ex.:-






 arise.

The letter $\square^{\prime} B a$, when sounding as a $w$, and followed by $\hat{\mathcal{R}} i$, is pronounced somewhat like the hard Russian vowel ör, but with a $w$ before it, or something like the English word way, save that the $a$ must be given the vowel-sound of $\mathrm{VV}^{\circ}$, and merged into the succeeding $i$, so as to make the two into a sort of diphthongal sound.

Second vowels, following immediately after a simple or compound consonant, whether qualified by a vowel-sign or not, are

 man.
 transliterations from Sanskrit, Päli, etc.

| $\begin{aligned} & 4 \\ & \stackrel{8}{8} \\ & \stackrel{y}{4} \end{aligned}$ | Name. |  | Remarks. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\overline{ }$ |  | T | The dental letter $5 T a$ reversed and pronounced as a palatal. A common abbreviation for the double affix anr. Ex. <br>  <br>  |
| F | Ta-a-log'ta | T | g' $T^{\prime} a$ reversed, and pronounced as an aspirated palatal. |
| 7 | Da-log - ${ }^{\text {da }}$ | D | 5. Da reversed, and pronounced as an unaspirated palatal, much as some Irishmen pronounce the $t h$ in think. |
| $\bar{\square}$ | Na-log-na | N | The dental letter © Na reversed, and pronounced as a palatal. |
| pr | Sha-log-K ${ }^{\text {ca }}$ | $K^{*}$ | - $\uparrow^{\circ}$ Sha reversed, and pronounced like $\mathbb{F P}^{*}$ $K^{\prime} a$. |
| D | Ka-Sha-log-tar- <br>  K'ya | K'y | T $K a$, with a reversed $q^{\circ}$ Sha subjoined. Pronounced like $\mathbb{5}^{\prime} \boldsymbol{K}^{\prime} y a$, strongly aspirated. |

§ 5.-The seven consonants to which uy Ya, in the form of


T. This is Kya, and it is so pronounced.

15 This is $K^{\prime} y a$, and it is so pronounced.
(7) This is Gya, and it is pronounced as some Irishmen pronounce Garden, guide, etc., i.e. Gyarden, Gyide, etc.

5 This is Pya, but Ya-ta changes the pronunciation into that of उ' Cha.

5 This is $P^{\prime} y a$, but $Y_{A-T \bar{A}}$, changes the pronunciation into that of あ $C h^{`} a$.

5 This is Bya but YA-TAX changes the pronunciation into that of $E^{\cdot}$ That is to say, when $5^{\circ}$ is an initial, it is pronounced $J^{\prime}$, which is practical'y like $\mathbf{x}^{\circ} C h a$; when not an initial, it is pronounced $J$. If prefixed by $\boldsymbol{F}^{-} \dot{D} a$, it is pronounced $Y$; and if further qualified by a vowel-sign, it takes the $Y$ sound


 separate.

ฐ1 This is Mya, but Ya-tā changes the pronunciation to that of . 3 Nya.
§ 6.-The fourteen consonants to whoh © $\boldsymbol{R} a$, in the form of
 £ 95 C, Ra-tā, Ra-subjoined.

|  | Name. |  | Remarks. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 7 | Ka-ra-tā-Ta | T | Like ${ }^{\circ}{ }^{\circ}$ ? |
| 回 | K'a-ra-tā-T'a | T' | . $\mathrm{F}^{\circ}$ |
| च | Ga-ra-tā-Da | D | $\cdots \vec{r}$ |
| 5 | Ta-ra-tā-Ta | T | $\cdots \quad{ }^{\circ}$ |
| 9 | T ${ }^{\text {a }}$-ra-tā-T ${ }^{\prime}$ 'a | T ${ }^{\text {c }}$ | . $\square^{\circ}$ |
| う | D́a-ra-tā-Ḍa | D |  |
| 9 | Na-ra-tā-Ṇa | N | $\cdots 80$ |
| $\exists$ | Pa-ra-tā-Ta | T | $\cdots \overrightarrow{ }$ |
| ㅋ̇ | $\mathrm{P}^{\prime} \mathrm{a}-\mathrm{ra}$-tā-T $\mathrm{T}^{\prime} \mathrm{a}$ | T ${ }^{\text {c }}$ | .. $\square^{\circ}$ |
| ® | Ba-ra-tā-Ḍa | D | $\cdots \mathbf{7}$ |
| \$ | Ma-ra-tā-Ma | M |  |
| 9 | Sha-ra-tā-Shra | Shr |  |
| S | Sa-ra-tā-Sa | S | This is the pronunciation in Literary Tibetan and in Sıkhim and Būtān. |
|  | Sa-ra-tā-Ta | T | This palatal pronunoiation is the pronuncia- <br>  quial of 0 . |
|  | Sa-ra-tā-Hra | Hr |  кё', Colloquial of Tsang. |
| 5 | Ha-ra-tā-Hra | Hr |  |

 Ha-ta), may be subjoined.
.With the exception of $\hat{\bar{\zeta}}{ }^{\prime} L^{\prime} \bar{a}$ (commonly seen $L h \bar{a}$ ), which is frequently met with, these $H a$-compounds are only used in transliterations from Sanskrit, Pāli, etc. The effect of subjoining $5^{\circ}$
 L/ $\overline{\mathrm{A}}-\mathrm{SA}$, Lhāsa, the Capital of Tibet.
 IS sUBJOINED.

The effect of subjoining the $\mathbb{P}^{\circ}$ is to raise and emphasize the tone, and to make the sound more compact.

园 ${ }^{\circ} \quad$ Pronounced $\check{D}^{2}$.





 Form of d, is subjoined.
$\triangleleft$ is called WA-żr because it is a corner of the letter तín Wa.
When scholars from Tibet first visited India to study Buddhistic

Literature，they did not realize that the Tibetan letter $\boldsymbol{\sigma}^{*}$ repre－ sented both $B$ and $W$（which in Sanskrit are denoted by and ब），just as the Bengali letter $\mathbb{4}$ represents them，and that म⿺辶⿱丷天口 $W a$ was therefore unnecessary．The later scholars，however，did realize it，and since then nin $^{W} W a$ has not been much used in Tibetan．It still survives，however，in some words，and in the form of $\downarrow W_{A-z ̇ R}$ ，subjoined to the consonants now under notice．

As regards Tibetan words，the effect of subjoining $\&$ is merely to lengthen somewhat the sound of the vowel inherent in，or quali－ fying，the consonant．In the following examples the vowel－sound is the inherent $\mathbb{V V}^{\bullet} a$ ，which，when lengthened，is $\bar{a}$ ．Thus ：－

TV $\mathrm{K} \overline{\mathrm{A}}, \mathrm{Oh}!$


길리 Dā－PA，Mouth．

$5^{\prime} \mathbf{I}^{\prime}$ D́A－wa，A Medical plant．
శ̛• Ts̄̄，Spunk，tinder．
$\triangle$
ה̄ Tsā，Grass，herb．

ぶ Ts ${ }^{\text {® }}$ ，Salt．

ヨ’ Ż̄̄，Nettle．


$\operatorname{R}^{\circ} \exists^{\circ}$ Lā－wa，$A$ species of deer．
$\triangle$
19 SHĀ，Flood，high water．
－ $9 \cdot 7^{\circ}$ Shā－wa，Deer．



WA－źUR is also used to represent the sound of $w \bar{a}$ ，as found in old Tibetan literature，and in Sanskrit，Pāli，Chinese，and other ancient foreign languages．Ex ：－

与ans• Hwa，Sugared medicine like lozenges（old Tibetan）．
ェ・मेंभृ＇I• Ra－me－shwā－ra，Rameshwar，near Ceylon．
 dynasty．
इֹ̃＇R Tibet．

It also represents the sound of $\hat{a}$ as found in modern Indian lan－ guages，e．g．Bengali，in which that sound and wā seem to be inter－ changeable．Ex．Swadesi，Shâdeshi．

It is even met with in conjunction with the vowel－sound $\sim N a-r o$
 nyi－ma do ：Ho，ye gods，to－day is sunny！（Literary）．

Wa－źvr also sometimes serves to show that a letter which might possibly be mistaken for a prefix is really an initial．Ex．5Lar ㄹ․ Dang－ po，Clear ；与ak not been subjoined to the $\mathcal{F}^{-}$in these words，one might have read them NGÄ－po，and ǴÄ－po．
 Ra-Heda is placed. The effect is to raise the tonic-pitch and emphasize the sound of each consonant, except those that are regarded as masculine. As to masculine letters see § 19. Sign with Romanized equivalent, ${ }^{\checkmark}$ above.

It will be noticed that $\pi K a, 5^{\cdot} T a$, $\mathfrak{J}^{*} T s a$, have not got above them the sign for heightening the Tonic-pitch, they being masculine letters and not requiring it.
§ 11. -The ten consonants on which the silent مroxi斤 La-go, LaHead, is placed. It has the same effect as the Ra-Head. Sign $U$.


In all these the $\mathcal{F l}^{\prime}$ is not pronounced, except in the case of $\mathfrak{\xi}^{\prime} L^{\prime} \bar{a}$, and except also when there is a preceding syllable which ends in a vowel. In this latter case the $\mathbb{W r}^{\circ}$ is usually carried back and given the
 Sometimes, however, it is carried back as $\mathrm{N}^{\circ}$, but not sounded. Yet it


 Sa-Head, is placed. It also has the same effect as the Ra-Head. Sign ${ }^{\bullet}$.


 letters，which are prefixed to divers Initial（sometimes called Radical） letters，simple and complex，in the formation of words．Their effect is to remove the aspirate，if any，of low－toned，i．e． Feminine and Very Feminine initials，and to raise the Tonic Pitch， and make the sound more compact．Thus，take $\mathbb{F i}^{-} \mathrm{J}^{\prime}$ UNG，the Perfect and Imperative root of RJ⿹\zh26龴⿵⺆ Jung－wa，To happen，ori－ ginate，arise．Here $\boldsymbol{\nabla}^{-}$is a feminine letter，and therefore low－toned， and，as an initial with $\approx Y a-t \bar{a}$ ，it is slightly aspirated in ${\underset{F}{5}}^{\circ}$. The addition of the prefix $\mathcal{R}^{\prime}$＇$a$ removes the aspirate，and makes the Tonic Pitch higher，and the sound more compact．

These prefixes are really a kind of Prepositive Affixes，sometimes modifying the meaning of a word，and sometimes entering into the formation of the Present，Perfect and Future Tenses of a verb． Though doubtless once upon a time actually pronounced，they are now generally silent．In the case，however，of $\mathbb{T}^{\circ}, \nabla^{\circ}$ ，and $\boldsymbol{N}^{\circ}$ ， when the syllable in which any of them occurs is preceded by a syllable ending in a vowel－sound，the $\nabla^{\circ}, \nabla^{\circ}$ ，or $\boldsymbol{\alpha}^{\circ}$ is often carried back in pronunciation to the vowel－sound and sounded with it． The prefixes $\mathcal{F}^{\circ}$ and $\mathcal{R}^{\prime}$ are never sounded or carried back．As regards $\mathbb{R}^{\circ}$ and $\mathbb{F}^{\prime}$ the Colloquial has a curious custom of transmuting



 $\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{A}}-\breve{z}^{\prime}{ }^{\mathbf{A}} \overline{\mathrm{A}}$ is pronounced $\mathrm{Nam}_{\mathrm{L}}{ }_{\mathrm{z}}{ }^{\prime} \overline{\mathrm{A}}$ ，clothes．

No letters are ever superposed upon or subjoined to any prefix；and，as will be seen when we come to the paragraph on the Tone System（\＄19），Prefixes，as such，are of genders different
from those of the same letters as Initials, or even as Affixes, save in the case of $\mathbf{J l}^{\prime}$ whioh is always Very Feminine.
af Cia. This prefix is of Common Gender, and it is found before the

 retain their natural sounds unaffected by the $\overline{\|} \boldsymbol{j}^{\circ}$ save as regards Tonic Pitch and compactness of utterance, as already explained. This prefix is found in many nouns. It also enters into the formation of the Present and Future Roots of certain verbs.



- D' $a$. This prefix is of Common Gender, and is met with before the
 - $^{*} B a$, and $\mathbb{J}^{*} M a$, and nine other letters which are merely compounds of these with $Y a-t \bar{a} \vec{a}$, or $R a-t \bar{a} \bar{a}$. It also enters into the



F. Ba. This prefix is of Masculine Gender, and occurs before the

 twenty-nine other letters, compounds of the foregoing, some having one or other of the different subjuncts, and some even one or other of the three different superposed letters. It is a very common prefix, and enters into the formation of the Perfect and Future



\＆Ma．This prefix is of Very Feminine Gender，and occurs before

 compounds of some of the foregoing in $Y a-t \bar{a}$ ，or $R a-t \bar{a}$ ．

8＇＇$A$ ．This Prefix is of Feminine Gender，and is found before
 お＇$T s^{〔} a$ ，巨＇$D z^{\prime} a$ ，and nine other letters，compounds of some of the foregoing in $Y a-t \bar{a}$ ，or $R a-t \bar{a}$ ．

The raising－power（if any）of these prefixes，as regards Tone， depends upon their gender as mentioned above，the masculine prefix $\nabla^{-} B a$ possessing the greatest power．
§ 14．－The following Tabular Statement of the consonants（in their simple form）which，as Initial Radical letters，take prefixes，and of the particular prefix or prefixes which，and which alone，each such consonant takes，may be found of use，especially in cases where the student feels some difficulty in determining whether any particular letter is or is not a prefix．For instance，no letter except $\mathcal{F}^{\bullet} \dot{D} a$ ， or $\square^{\circ} B a$ ，immediately preceding a $\Pi^{\circ} K a$ ，can be a prefix；no letter except $\mathbb{N}^{\prime} M a$ ，or $\mathbb{R}^{\prime}, A$ ，immediately preceding a $\mathbb{R}^{\prime} K^{\prime} a$ ，can be a prefix ；and so on．

| Initial or Radical letter． | Prefix or Prefixes taken． | Example． |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\pi$ | $5$ $\square$ | 5サエ・気 Kar－po，White． <br>  |


| Initial or Radical letter． | Prefix or Prefixes taken． | Example． |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\beta$ | $\boldsymbol{\$}$ | इस¢「ご $K^{\prime}$＇än－po，Abbot． |
|  | $R$ |  away． |
| －1 | 5 |  |
|  | $\square$ |  |
|  | 5 | इᄌרָ Go，Head． |
|  | $R$ |  |
| 5 | 5 |  |
|  | \％ | お上エ｀\％「 |
| 3 | 4 | － |
|  | $\square$ |  |
| あ | \＄ |  |
|  | $R$ | \＆おふ｀Ch＇am，Masquerade． |
| E | $\square$ | 听可习会亏＇ $2 i-y i^{\prime}$ ，Glory，Splendour． |
|  | $\boldsymbol{\Sigma}$ |  |
|  | $R$ | REDTANa＇Ji－pa，To be afraid． |
| 3 | ब1 |  |
|  | $\square$ |  |
|  | \＄ |  |


| Initial or Radical letter． | Prefix or Prefixes taken． | Example． |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 5 | 41 | \＃15 ${ }^{\circ}$ Tam，Rumour． |
|  | $\neg$ |  |
| 9 | \＄ | 及行 $T^{\prime \prime} \bar{a}$ ，End． |
|  | $Q$ | RGズゴ T＇ung－wa，To drink． |
| 5 | \＃ |  |
|  | $\checkmark$ | ロミֹデ De－po，Good，Well． |
|  | \＄ | K15 ${ }^{\circ} \bar{D}^{\prime} \bar{a}$ ，Arrow． |
|  | $R$ |  |
| $\bar{\top}$ | 7 |  |
|  | $\square$ |  |
|  | \＄ | इ¢＊$\breve{N}^{\prime} \bar{a}$ ，Oath． |
| 5 | 5 | 50²\％Pang－po，Witness． |
| 4 | $R$ |  |
| $\square$ | 5 |  |
|  | $R$ | RコF＇a゙ Bar－wa，To blaze up． |
| \＄ | 5 |  |
| ล์ | 4 |  |
|  | $\square$ |  |


| Initial or Radical letter． | Prefix or Prefixes taken． | Example． |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| む | \＄ | お咸 Ts ${ }^{\text {co，Lake．}}$ |
|  | 2 |  |
| $E$ | $\square$ |  |
|  | 51 |  |
|  | R |  |
| H | None |  |
| โฺ | 7 |  |
|  | $\square$ |  |
| ヨ | ब1 |  |
|  | $\square$ |  |
| 2 | None． |  |
| W | 4 |  |
| $\pm$ | $\square$ | －${ }_{\text {d }} \cdot 9 \cdot$ La－sha，Thigh． |
| Q | None． |  |
| .9 | $\begin{aligned} & 81 \\ & 5 \end{aligned}$ |  <br>  |


| Initial or Radical letter． | Prefix or Prefixes taken． | Example． |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| N | $\Phi$ |  <br>  |
| 5 | None． |  |
| T | None． |  |

## NOTES．

1．－Letters are either simple，like T＇，or complex，like T＇，쥼，島，叫， $5 \widetilde{T} \bar{j}$ ，and so forth．Syllables in which Prefixes occur may consist of two，three，or four such letters．For the purpose of ascertaining what letters are Prefixes，complex letters may be regarded as one letter．No letter that has a nother letter superadded to it，or subjoined to it，or which is qualified by any of the vowel－signs －，ぃ，$\sim, \cdots$ ，can be a Prefix．

2．－In the case of a two－letter syllable，whenever the second letter is qualified by a vowel－sign，or is otherwise complex，the first letter， if one of the five mentioned in § 13，may be taken to be a Prefix． Ex．－
3．－In the case of a two－letter syllable in which both letters are simple letters，then，even if the first letter is one of the five mentioned in



4．－In the case of a syllable oonsisting of more than two letters，the first，if one of the five mentioned in § 13，may be taken to be a Prefix．This is so whether the next letter is or is not simple．

 rarely it is otherwise，as in the case of the $5^{\circ}$ in the word §＇50耳又 RI－DA，Wild animal．Such words are often written with a wa－zur under the $\boldsymbol{F}^{;}$，to show that it is not a Prefix，but an Initial．Thus


5．－Should the Prefix be $\boldsymbol{5}^{\circ}$ ，and the Initial be simple $\boldsymbol{\square}^{\circ}$ ，then $\square$ loses its $b$ sound，and is pronounced $u$ ，or $w$ as modified by the
 Modifications，§ 3）．Should，however，the $\boldsymbol{F}^{*}$ be accompanied by $\approx(y a-t \bar{a})$ ，or any vowel－sign，it similarly loses its $w$ sound，and takes that of the ya－tā or of the vowel－sign．Ex．－ $\mathbf{F D C}^{\circ}$ Not Bang， but Wang，Authority，Power；5习a゙ W̆̈̆，Pinnacle，Spire；59＊
 Nephew of a Lama．If the $5^{\circ}$ be accompanied by，（Ra－tā）． it acquires the sound of $d$ ，i．e．palatal $d$（see § 6）．Ex．－－ $\mathbf{F Z}^{\circ} \check{\mathrm{D}}_{\mathbf{A}}$ ，


## § 15．－Peculiarities of Pronunciation．

1．－When a syllable beginning with one of the Prefixes $\nabla^{\circ}$ ，$\nabla^{\prime}$ ，or ； follows another syllable ending in a vowel－sound，the Prefix is often in the Colloquial carried back，sometimes with its own sound， sometimes with a changed sound，to the preceding syllable，and pronounced as if it were part of it．Ex．－



 .K'AB-KYÖN-N゙ANG-NGA, To censure.

म'क్' K‘A-CH‘U, pronounced K‘AM-CH‘U, Law suit.
 ing.
2.-The Prefixes $\boldsymbol{F}^{\circ}$ and $\mathbb{R}^{\circ}$ are never themselves carried back; but in the case of $\mathbb{R}^{\circ}$ and also of $\mathbb{K}^{\circ}$ the sound of $n$ is sometimes substituted, and pronounced with the preceding syllable. Ex.-




 To add.


3.-Even when the first syllable ends in $\boldsymbol{\sigma}^{\circ}$, the same custom sometimes holds, probably because of the incomplete way in which final $\pi{ }^{\circ}$ is uttered, the syllable therefore seeming to end in a vowel-sound. Ex.-
 $\mathrm{CH}^{〔} \mathrm{~A} \mathrm{~N}-\mathrm{Dt}$ ', Knot.
4.- The sound of $n$ is sometimes transmuted into that of $m$. Ex.-


सิ5］Yin－pa，pronounced Yim－pa，To be（copula）．
 To add．

5．－The sound of $\alpha^{-}$as final of first syllable is also sometimes changed into that of $m$ ．Ex．－

 Victory．

6．－The sounds that are latent in superadded letters．sometimes result in audible sounds，pronounced with the preceding syllable．Ex．－

E＇chic＇J＇a－tong，pronounced J＇an－dong，Tea churn．

 containing the ashes of a saint or other relics．

7．－$R a$ as a final is frequently pronounced so softly as to be almost unheard．Ex．－

太̀న・ザ Ser－ka，pronounced Sr－ka，Chink．
 2
 Naked．
－${ }^{\circ} \mathrm{Q}$＇Bar－la，pronounced Ba－la，Between．



gís Tsar，pronounced Tsa，Margin
al｜ins．Ser，pronounced Se，Gold．

AREAT Sar－pa，pronounced Sa－pa，New．

8．－When the first of two syllables ends in a vowel－sound，and the next syllable consists of $\boldsymbol{\nabla}^{\boldsymbol{*}} w a$ ，the latter of ten takes the sound of $\boldsymbol{a}$ ．Ex．－ 줒구 Chu－wa，pronounced Chu－a，Dung of cattle．

9．－The following is a common case of $\boldsymbol{\square}^{*} w a$ ，or $\boldsymbol{v}^{*} p a$ ，being reduced to the sound of $a:-$


10．－When the first of two syllables ends in が，and the next syllable is $\square^{-} w a$ ，the latter is often pronounced as $\mathcal{F}^{\circ} r a$ ，but sometimes it is reduced to a mere $a$ ．Ex．－
 さ̆ang－nga，To meet．


11．－The above are samples of irregularities with which one sometimes meets ；practice alone will enable the student to know when other words similarly spelt follow these Colloquial customs，and when they ought to be pronounced according to the regular rules．The following are a few more specimens of irregular pronunciations ：－
a．jyl Ma－nyong，pronounced Ma－nyung，Never．

 To chat．
 come，go．
 Mattress．


저윙ㅆㅎ Mön－lam，pronounced Mö－lam，Prayer．
 Protector，Saviour．
 chu，each of which，when following an Initial，simple or complex， completes the formation of a syllable．



Of these $\nabla^{\circ}, \Sigma^{\circ}, \nabla^{\circ}$ ，and $\mathbb{F}^{\circ}$ are frequently seen with an addi－
 are then called Double Affixes．

Another kind of Double Affixes is met with in old Tibetan books．It is very rare，but for Literary purposes the student may as well make a note of it ．It consists of $\boldsymbol{\sigma}^{-} N a, \mathfrak{F}^{-} R a$ ，or $\mathrm{op}^{\circ} L a$ ， followed by $\mathcal{F}^{\circ} \dot{D} a$ ，here called $5^{\circ} \mathfrak{F}^{\circ} \mathrm{H}_{\mathrm{A}-\mathrm{DA}}$ ，Hard D．Thus：－

$$
5^{\circ} n d, \quad \text { ₹5 } r d, \quad \text { सFं } l d .
$$

It is used to express the Past Tense．Ex：－

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 미NNN․․․ Sändera, He heard. } \\
& \text { 牙ごロ" Gyurd-pa, He became. } \\
& \text { बतर̀m }
\end{aligned}
$$

The modern Literary practice，however，is to omit the final $\mathcal{F}^{\circ}$ ， which may be regarded as obsolete．

As to the pronunciation of the affixes $\Rightarrow \prod^{\circ}, \bar{j}^{\circ}, \mathbb{R}^{\circ}, \mathbb{N}^{\circ}, 5^{\circ}, \mathbb{N}^{\circ}$ ， see § 3，Tabular Statement of Vowel Modifications，and Notes thereto．

The Diotionary Order of the above－mentioned ten Consonantal Finals，and of the four Double Fingls in $\mathbb{N}^{\circ}$ ，is as follows：－
1．可 …ga．
8． $\boldsymbol{\square} \mathbb{N}^{\circ}$ ．．b́a－sa．

9．ঝ＇．．$m a$ ．
3． $5^{\circ}$ ．．nga．
10．ฟN ${ }^{-.}$ma－sa．
4．โズ ．．nga－sa．
11．R＇．．＇a．
5．5．．．da．
12．F．．．$r a$ ．
6．す ．．$n a$ ．
13．ャ阝 ．．la．
7．$\square^{-} \quad . \quad$ b́a．
14． $\mathbb{N}^{(.)} s a$ ．

The above，of course，is their order under each letter of the T／T• $\mathrm{K}_{\mathrm{A}}-\mathrm{K}^{\prime} \mathbf{A}$ ；that is to say，it is their order after，or in subordination to， the Alphabetical Order，if that term may be used in connection with the TR｜

As to the Gender of the Ten Final Affixes，see § 19.
 plications in $\mathrm{K}^{*} o$ ，of certain letters when forming the terminals of verbs．The Duplication has the effect of emphasizing，or intensi－ fying，or solemnizing the expression of a fact．It is a feature of Literary Tibetan only，and is met with in nearly every sentence of the existing translation into Tibetan of the New Testament．

बों Go, रें No, रें Do, रें No, तें Bo, Wo,


Examples:-


In the Colloquial this would be:-




Su-kyang k'ong-la lag-pa ma re'go: And no man laid hands on him.

Sill yang $k^{\prime}$ ola laf-pa ma zhyagga (for zhyag-pa) re' or shyagma song.

In the Colloquial this might be:-

or :-

Yi-shā-yi bu grad typo Da-wid jung no: Jesse's son was king David $=$ Jesse begat David the king.

Yi-shāi bu gyd̄-po Da-wid yin: Jesse's son was King David.

Yi-shā-ȳ̄ дyüa-po Da-wid kyd'song: Jesse begat King David.
$K^{\prime} y 0^{\prime}-t s^{\prime} o ̄ i$ nang-na to' mem '-do: Ye have not life in yourselves.

Colloquially :-

4. -
$K^{\prime} y \ddot{o}^{\prime}$ ky bu sōn-no: Thy son liveth.

Colloquially :-




N ga ga -ru yo '-sa la llb mi t'ubi-b́o : Where I am, ye cannot come.

Colloquially ：－－



6．－Wに． शूर्व

Colloquially ：－






Colloquially ：－



 alk

Colloquially ：－

気行



Nga ga－－pa yó＇－sa la yong t＇uímyi $m a ̈ n$ ，or yong mi t＇ub．

Yang ngäd de t＇a－mai nyin par lang－war $j^{\prime} a$－o：And I will raise him up at the last day．

Yang ngд̈ة de nyi－ma žhyug－sht la yar kya＇yong．

Kön－ch＇o＇gi $t^{‘} \bar{u}^{\prime}-t^{\prime} o-w a$ de la $\breve{n} \ddot{a}-$ par gyur－ro：The wrath of God will abide on him．

Kön－ch＇o＇gi $k^{\prime} \bar{a}-\mathrm{ch}^{‘} \ddot{a}^{\prime}$ de la（or $\left.k^{\prime} o l a\right)$ yong－gi－rè.

Yang k＇ong gī nga－la kòn－ch＇o＇la nyèn－kur $j$＇ढ̈ shi＇chē sung－so： Then said he unto me，worship God．

De－n䴔 $k^{\prime} o-r \bar{e}$ nga，la kōn－ch＇o＇la mō－lam t＇ob daǵ－ga－rang láb－ j＇ung．

D́e n̈̈a nam－k＇${ }^{\prime} \bar{a}$ na ẗ̈a žhyän źhyi t＇ong－war gyur－to：And there was seen another sign in heaven．

Colloquially :-

De-nї̆ nam-k' $\bar{a}$ la yam-ts'än zhyäm-pa chi' t'ong j'ung.

N.B. $-\bar{F}^{-}$is used only with the Literary Perfect root after


The Full stop |, or \|, will henceforth be omitted. See Writina and Punctuation, § 20.
§ 18.-Colloquial Duplications.
As regards certain verbs in the Infinitive Mood, or in the Perfect tense of the Indicative Mood. i.e. verbs, the roots of which end in the
 in the Colloquial. Instead of pronouncing in the ordinary way the particle $\mathbb{L V}^{-}$or that follows the root, the speaker merely duplicates, or emphasizes with an added $a$ sound, the final consonantalsound.

 ற̣od́-Ǵa-nang-nga, To proclaim or publish.

So, too, as regards the Perfect Indicative, instead of saying



Other Examples are :-
nang-nga: To absolve.
Kusho kyi sē-la (for wa) fanc-nga (for wa) yin; the
master absolved or has absolved.
 (for Wa) NANG-NGA (for Wa) YIN ; The lord absolved or has absolved.
 To err.
 KUSHO KYİ NOR•RA (for WA) ŇANG-NGA (for WA) YIN: or still better :-

 WA), Or T' T NOR SHOR-RA (for WA) YiN, The master erred, or has erred.
 I erred, I have erred.
 To shun, To renounce.
 'Ǵİ PONG-NGA (for Wa) ŇANG-NGA (for Pa) RE': He shunned, He has shunned.
 rè': He shunned, He has shunned.

When the root ends in final ${ }^{\circ}{ }^{\circ}$, the Colloquial sometimes resorts to a following ${ }^{\mathbf{F}}$, instead of the Duplication as above. Ex.-

 To stumble.
 ra (for wa) N゙ang-nga (for pa) yin: He stumbled, He has stumbled.

At the same time this were better phrased thus：－
 （ Or KU DAB）shor－ra（for wa）ne＇．He has stumbled．
 I stumbled，I have stumbled．

As regards verbs the roots of which end in $5^{\circ}$ ，or $\boldsymbol{\Phi}^{\circ}$ ，or $\mathbf{Q}^{\circ}$ ，or $\boldsymbol{R}^{\circ}$ ， there is no such duplicating custom．They are pronounced in the regular way．

See also $\$ 15,8$ ，as to $\square^{\circ}$ wa changing into $a$ after a vowel－sound．
§ 19. --The Tone System.

Tone is a very important factor，a fairly correct tone being almost more desirable than absolutely correct grammar；and there exist certain rules on the subject which should be carefully studied．
 is classified by Tibetan Grammarians under six heads，having reference to the respective Genders of the several letters．

These heads are ：－
1． P ＇o，Masculine．
2．ठ广ेू Manning，Common．
3．रू० Mo，Feminine．


6．इお゙よ゙ฎो5 Ts＇ÄN mem，Neuter．

## Masculine Letters．

These are pronounced with a special emphasis，fullness，compact－ ness，and distinctness，arising from a powerful use of the vocal organs． They never undergo any modifications in this respect，even when
guarded by Prefixes or Super-posed Letters, but always preserve intact their own natural sounds.

## Feminine and Very Feminine Letters.

In pronouncing these the vocal organs are relaxed, and the phonetic body of the letter is not so much sent forth from the mouth, as suffered to emanate from it gently and gradually. These letters are subject to phonetic modification when guarded. For instance, the addition of Prefixed or Super-posed Letters has the effect of raising the Tonic Pitch, and softening the sound. Thus, alF Gang, is unguarded, and therefore, to an English ear, sounds very like Kang. But $5^{7} \mathbb{R}^{\circ} G^{\prime} \bar{A}$, pronounced like the $G a$ in Garland, and 쥭́ GANG, similarly pronounced, are guarded, in the first case by a Prefix, and in the second by a Super-posed Letter, and therefore the sound is no longer hard and compact like the $k$ sound of unguarded $4 \Gamma$, but softer and exactly like the sound of the English hard $g$, and the tone is moreover raised, or brought to the Pitch-level of a Masculine Letter.

## Common Letters.

The manner of pronouncing these differs only in degree from the way in which Maseuline and Feminine Letters are pronounced. That is, they are uttered less compactly and emphatically than the Masculine, and less softly than the Feminine Letters.

## Sub-Feminine or Barren Letters.

The pronunciation of these is also only a matter of degree as compared with the pronunciation of Feminine Letters.

## Nedter Letter.

This has a hard and compact sound.
The following Tabular Statement will elucidate the above remarks:-


|  | tter. | Gender. | Pronunciation. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Nga |  |  |
|  | Nya |  |  |
| 耳 | Na | Very Feminine. | More gently and gradually than the Feminine. |
|  | Ma |  |  |
|  | Ra |  |  |
|  | La |  |  |
|  | Ha | Sub-Feminine or Barren . | Without effort. |
| $R$ | $\therefore \mathrm{A}$ |  |  |
| W" | A | Neuter | Hard, from the base of the throat. |

Even the Five Prefixes possess a gender of their own. Thus :$\boldsymbol{J}^{\cdot} B a$ is Masculine, having been Feminine, as an Initial.
$\left.\begin{array}{rl}7 & G a \\ \boldsymbol{F} & \text { D́a }\end{array}\right\}$ are Common, having been Feminine, as Initials.
$\mathcal{R}^{\prime}$ ' $A$ is Feminine, having been Barren, as an Initial.
하 Ma is Very Feminine, unaltered.
So, too, the Ten Final Affixes have the following genders :-ष- Ga, Masculine, having been Feminine as an Initial, and Common as a Prefix.
$₹ \dot{D} a, \quad$ Ditto. Ditto.
$\exists^{*} B a$, Ditto, having been Feminine as an Initial, and Masculine as a Prefix.

Ar $S a$, Masculine, having been Common as an Initial.

- ${ }^{*}$ Na, Common, having been Very Feminine as an Initial.
$\left.\begin{array}{l}\text { ㄷ } R a \\ \text { هr } L a\end{array}\right\}$ Ditto, having been Barren as Initials.
[• Nga) Feminine, having been Very Feminine as Initials, and ㄷ. $M a\}$ ㅎ having been Very Feminine, as a Prefix.
$R^{\prime}$ ' $A$, Feminine, having been Barren as an Initial, and Feminine as a Prefix.

Thus, the only Letter which undergoes no change in gender, whether as Initial, Prefix, or Final Affix, is \$゙ Ma.

In his Primer of Standard Tibetan the Revd. Mr. Edward Amundsen, when dealing with the Tone system, gives prominence to the Pitch and Length, rather than to the Compactness, Emphasis, and Dis. tinctness of the tone. His classification may be represented thus :--

|  | High and short. |
| :---: | :---: |
| 2. $8^{*} 9^{*}$ *** | High and long. |
|  | Medium and short. |
|  | Medium and long. |
|  | $\left\{\begin{array}{l} \text { Descending but re-ascend- } \\ \text { ing and long. } \end{array}\right.$ |
| 6. $\sim^{\circ}$ | Very low and long. |

We have scen that the Length or Shortness of the Tone is governed by rules of its own (see §3): hence we need not consider it here in connection with Рiтсн. So far, therefore, as Pitch alone is concerned, Mr. Amundsen's system may be reduced to only three classifications, namely :-


Now, if, instead of regarding this question of Tone from the point of view of Pitch, we regard it from that of emphasis, fullness, compactness and distinctness, we shall find that the subject again arranges itself under three heads namely, utterances that are very compact and full, those that are only moderately so, and those that are soft and gradual emanations.

To sum up : for all practical purposes it will be found that (1) words beginning with the Masculine Initials $\pi^{\circ}, \boldsymbol{\top}, 5^{\circ}, 5^{\circ}, \boldsymbol{5}^{\circ}$, should be pronounced compactly and fully, and in a high key; (2) words begin-
 pronounced with moderate emphasis and in a moderately high key; (3) while words beginning with the Feminine Initials $\mathrm{Al}^{\circ} \mathrm{E}^{\prime}, \mathrm{F}^{\circ}, \mathrm{F}^{\circ}$,
 $\mathbb{F}^{\circ}$, or with the Barren Initlals $\mathfrak{F}^{\circ}, \mathbb{Q}^{\circ}, \overline{7}, \mathfrak{q}^{\circ}$, or with the NeUter Initial ' 3 '', should be pronounced softly and in a low key. It should also be remembered that when an Initial has a Prefix, or a Surmodnting Letter, the utterance according to these three rules is somewhat intensified as regards Masculine and Common Initials, and heightened and rendered more compact as regards all the others.

It would appear, however, to be doubtful whether Prefixes have much to do with the raising of the Tonic Pitch. What is more certain is that they are used (l) for modifying the meaning of a word, e.g.,


 the formation of the tenses of verbs, as already explained (§ 13 ); and (3) to effect changes in the pronunciation of Initial Letters. Thus $\boldsymbol{F I}^{\circ}$, as an Initial, is pronounced almost like $K$ in English; but, when prefixed by $5^{\circ}, \nabla^{\circ}$, $\mathbb{R}^{\prime}$, or $R^{\prime}$, it is pronounced like hard $G$ in English Again $\nabla^{\circ}$, as an Initial, is pronounced almost like $P$ in English; but when prefixed by $\mathcal{F}^{\text {; }}$, it is pronounced as $W$, when unqualified by any vowel-sound, and as the vowel-sound only, when so qualified ; or. if prefixed by $\mathcal{R}^{\prime}$, it takes the sound of $B$ in English. Again, as regards $5{ }^{\circ}$, see § 13 . Again, $5^{\circ}$, as an Initial, is pronounced as a dental $T$; but if prefixed by 피, $\nabla^{\circ}$, $\mathbb{F}^{\circ}$, or $\mathbb{R}^{\circ}$, it takes the sound of a dental $D$. Again, $E^{\circ}$ and E; when Initials, are pronounced with a slight aspirate; but, when prefixed by $\bar{\nabla}^{\prime}$, $\mathbb{\delta}^{\prime}$, or $\mathbb{R}^{\prime}$, they lose the aspirate. Again $\exists^{\prime}$, as an Initial, is pronounced almost like $S$ in English; but, when prefixed by $\operatorname{Fi}^{\circ}$ or $\nabla^{\circ}$, it is pronounced like $Z$ in English. Lastly, $\mathbb{Q}^{\circ}$, as an Initial, is pronounced almost like shya; but, prefixed by $\nabla^{\circ}$ or $\nabla^{\circ}$, it takes the sound of zhya.

## § 20.-Writing and Punctuation.

Originally, Tibetan was a monosyllabic language. Nowadays, however, its words are mostly dissyllabic. There is no attempt in the written or printed language to divide off words from one another, either by spacing or by punctuation. Hence, they all succeed and seem to run into each other in one continuous line, and the reader's knowledge is all that enables him to recognize them individually. It is otherwise, however, with syllables. A syllable may consist of a single consonant. simple or complex, or of two or more such consonants, silent or pronounced. But, be its consonantal structure what it may, the whole collocation of letters possesses only one vowel-sound, inherent or expressed by vowel-signs. Every such collocation or syllable must be marked off
from．its successor by a dot（．）placed at the right－hand top corner of the final consonant．This dot is called बेष＂Ts＇è＇．To mark the termina－ tion of clauses such as those for which we generally use a comma，a semi－colon，or a colon，another sign is used in the shape of a vertical
 the あ゙ष ${ }^{\circ}$ after the last consonant is omitted，except in the case of final ［• nga，which always retains it．A double vertical stroke（｜｜），called
 of a paragraph，or of a chapter，a fourfold vertical stroke（｜｜｜｜），called

 Instead of the two plain strokes the following，$\%$ ．Instead of the one plain stroke the following，${ }^{8}$ ．In some books the comma is seen thus，\％．Sometimes the dot（ ${ }^{\circ}$ ）or केष＂．is seen 6，and sometimes even larger，6．In Book－letter and in Running－hand the ぶম／is seen thus，c．

At the commencement of printed and written matter symbols like the following may often be seen：－

重 This is called Swasti or the Auspicious Bene－ diction．It may begin any work dealing with Ethics and Morality．The top figures are the Double Flame，or Radianoe，the next are the Double Gem，and the lowest are the Double Lotus．On the right is दิरri951


Triple ditto，for writings on Philosophy and Theology：

Radiance，Gem，Triple Lotus，and Stalk．Begin－ ning chapters in Religious works．

Lotus and Stalk．Used with official correspondence， proverbs，maxims，etc．，to indicate a fresh beginning．

## Ordinary Block Print.

The proper method of writing this is first to make the thick horizontal stroke at the top of each letter, and then the rest of the oharacter, working from left to right as in English, and adding the Ya-tas, Ra-tas, and vowel-signs last. The straight vertical strokes should be long, fairly thick at the top, and tapering to the bottom.

In writing $Q^{9}$, the vertical stroke on the left may first be made downwards, and then the rest, never omitting clearly to define the loop in the centre. Or, a horizontal stroke may first be made, then the vertical stroke on the left downwards, and then the remainder, from the right-hand end of the horizontal stroke. The down-stroke from the loop must be long, quite vertical, and tapering, otherwise the beginner is apt to produce something which might be mistaken for $\mathcal{R}^{\circ}$, which has no central loop, and whose final down-stroke is short, and instead of being vertical slopes off to the right.

Other letters which the beginner is apt to mix up with each other when attempting to write them, are $\Gamma^{\prime} N g a, 5 T a$, and $5^{\circ} D a$. The down-strokes in $n g a$ and $d a$ begin at or near the right end of the horizontal line, and curve well to the left, whereas the down-stroke of $T a$ begins at the left end of the horizontal line, and comes straight down, or even with a slight slant to the right. The final stroke of nga is short and thick, while those of $T a$ and $D a$ are long and tapering. $T a ' s$ final down-stroke, moreover, takes a bend to the left, while that of $D a$ bears well to the right. Both, too, are brought well down, whereas $N g a$ 's final stroke is stunted.

In writing $q^{\circ}$ the little stroke on the left should first be made, then the thin stroke next to it, then the top horizontal stroke and undercircle, and finally the long vertical down-stroke.

9* may be written by first making the top horizontal stroke, then the whole left side of the letter, and finally the vertical down-stroke on the right. Or, after the horizontal stroke, first the little curved stroke in the top left-hand oorner. then a straight diagonal line from
right to left downwards, and finally the vertioal stroke on the right downwards.

In writing letters like of and $\mathbb{N}^{\circ}$, the down-stroke containing the loop is usually commenced from near the right-hand end of the horizontal stroke.

The vertical stroke of $5^{\circ}$ should project down slightly beyond the point of junction with the curve on the right.
₹ First the horizontal, then the thin curving down-stroke, beginning it from the centre of the horizontal, and lastly the thick curving stroke on the right, the top end of which should meet the thin down-stroke a little below the letter's junction with the horizontal. Or thus, $\mathbb{V}^{5}$, that is, first the horizontal stroke, then the short down stroke, and lastly the curving stroke, somewhat after the way we write the figure five.

历. First the horizontal, next from the centre of that stroke the down-stroke, then the loop on the left, working upwards, and then by carrying on the pen, the loop on the right working downwards.

स ${ }^{\circ}$ First make an $\mathcal{R}^{\circ}$ That is to say, a vertical down-stroke, then the rest of the figure. Lastly make a straight down-stroke, meeting the end of $\mathbb{R}^{\circ}$, has no loop.
3. First the dot, or thick short stroke on the left at the top, then the half circle to the right, then the thick short stroke slanting from left to right, and finally the long hook. Or else, first a horizontal stroke, then the dot or short thick stroke on the left at the top and then the rest as stated.
$W^{*}$ First the horizontal, then from its centre or from near its right-hand end the short thin lines loping downward to the left, then the hook with the tail brought up level with but clear of the horizontal stroke; next, from near the top of the second stroke a straight or curving line downwards with a slant to the right; and lastly the vertical down-stroke.

W* First a short horizontal, then a sort of $U$ with another horizontal over the right-hand limb, then the stroke slanting to the right, and finally the vertical down-stroke. Or, first two parallel vertioal strokes of equal length, with a horizontal on each, then another parallel vertical stroke a little longer than the others. Then join the first two with an under-curved stroke ; and lastly, with a slanting stroke from left to right, join the second and third vertical strokes, at the bottom. The first way is the better.

If First write an elongated $\mathrm{or}^{\circ}$, thus $\mathrm{Ir}^{\circ}$, and then add the bar across the middle.

Or first write an ordinary ar' $^{\circ}$, and then subjoin a $\underset{\sim}{ }$ without its horizontal stroke.—Thus 21

S* First a short horizontal, then the thin short down-stroke, slanting to the left, then the thick stroke up the end of it, slanting to the right. Then, from near the top of the second stroke, make the long down-stroke, sloping to the right, and lastly the vertical downstroke.

- First a horizontal, then the short thin down-stroke from near the right-hand end of the horizontal, and slanting to the left, then the thick stroke at the bottom, beginning it from well to the left of the down-stroke and carrying it boldly across the end of the latter, with a good sweep to the right and with a downward trend.

In making $\sqrt{ }$ the beginner should see that he does not make it look like $\boldsymbol{a}^{*}$
$\boldsymbol{q}^{*}$ First a fairly long horizontal. Then from near the left-hand end a thin downward stroke slanting to the left, then a thick down-ward-stroke slanting to the right, and finally the vertical down-stroke, commencing it from the right-hand end of the horizontal.

A] First a fairly long horizontal. Then to the first half of it
subjoin a small $\sqrt[4]{ }$ without its horizontal．Then，from the right－hand end of the horizontal，make the long vertical down－stroke．
$\mathbb{A}^{\circ}$ This is the same as $ष \nabla^{\circ}$ reversed．
$\pi^{\circ}$ First the horizontal．Then the two little strokes，and finally． the long vertical down－stroke．

## Book－Letter and Running－Hand．

These are very much alike，the Running Hand，however，being the more difficult of the two to read and write．Specimens of both， in all possible combinations，are given in Csoma de Körös＇s Grammar （1834）．
§ 21.-Spelling.

Tibetan spelling may be described as a cumulative process，one only of the component parts of a syllable being taken up at a time．Next， the sound so taken up is repeated，but with the addition in advance， or by way of assumption，of the second component part．Then this second component part is pronounced by itself．Finally，the phonetic effect of all that has thus been taken up is pronounced together，and that effect represents the literal expression of the syllable．

A knowledge of how to spell is most useful，and it is quite worth the student＇s while to take the trouble to acquire it．

The following examples are intended to exhibit the process pro－ gressively，through most of the stages from simple to complex syllables：－

> I.-Simple Consonants.
$\boldsymbol{\eta}$（for example），and one final affix．
珒 Ka，Kag－ga，Ka＇．
T®Na，Kang－nga，Kang．
TKNa，Kä＇－da，Kä＇．

Tが Ka，Kä－la，Kä．
クボN゙ Ka，Kä－sa，Kä．

II．－Consonant and Double Affix．
AIENV Ga，Gang－nga－sa，Gang．
［ABN＇K＇a，K＇am－ma－sa，K＇am．
内셔N K K＇a，K＇am－ma（Lä＇－kor）－sa，K＇am．
III．－Consonant with Prefix and Affix．

IJPR＇Ma－wo：K＇a，K＇’a－＇a，K＇’à．

IV．－Consonant and Single Vowel－sign．
命 Ka，gi－gu，Ki．
$\prod^{7} \mathrm{Ka}$, zhyab－kyu，Ku．
गें Ka，deng－bu，Ke．
市 $\mathrm{Ka}, ~$ na－ro，$K$ ．

V．－Consonant with double Vowel－sign and Subjunct．
新 Ga，narro，go ；＇a，na－ro，oû；G＇ô̂．
VI．－Consonant with Vowel－sign and Affix．
猃－Ka，na－ro，ko；kong，nga，Kong．
₹̄• Ra，ḍeng－bu，re；rè＇－da，Rè＇．

VII．－Consonant with Vowel－sign and Double Affix．


> VIII.-Reversed Letters.

フౌ지エ̆ D́a－log－Da；ma；Ra，źhyab－kyu，Ru；Da－ma－ru．
IX.-Ya-tās.

TV Ka, Ya-tã, Kya.
$5 \mathrm{~Pa}, \mathrm{Ya}-\mathrm{ta}, \quad$ Cha.

$5{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{Ba}, \mathrm{Ya}-\mathrm{ta}, J^{\prime} a$.
IV $\mathbf{V} \mathbf{M a}, \mathrm{Ya}-\mathrm{ta}, \quad N y a$.

> X.-Ya-tā with Vowel-sign.

包 Ka, ya-tā, kya; kya, gi-gu, kyi.
XI.-Ya-tā with Vowel-sign and Affix.

गิर్' Ka, ya-tā, kya; kya, gi-gu, kyi ; kvī, sa, kyí.
XII.-Ya-tā with Vowel-sign and Double Affix.
 ba, sa, $k^{\prime} y e b$.
XIII. -Ya-tā with Prefix and Affix.


XIV.-Ya-tā with Prefix, Vowel and Affx.
₹ ్ָరిన D́a-wo: ka, ya-tā, kya; kya, gi-gu, kyi; kyīla, kyi.
 ch ${ }^{\circ}$.
XV.-Ya-tā with Prefix, Vowel and Double Affix.
 ga-sa, kyi.

XVI．－Ya－ta and Affix，each with Vowel－sign．
ฝิ，K＇a，ya－tā，k＇ya；k＇ya，deng－bu，k＇ye；＇a，zhyab－ kyu，＇u；k＇ye－＇u．

XVII．－Ra－tās and Ha－tās．
Spelt like ya－tās，but the following would be new ：－

 br＇ $\bar{u}$ ；br＇um，ma，br＇ūm ；ha，ra－ta，hra；hra，gi－gu， hri ；Br＇ūm－hri．

XVIII．－La－tās．

目 $\mathrm{Za}, \mathrm{la}-\mathrm{ta}, D a$ ．

XIX．—Wa－žurs．
 $\mathbf{k}^{\prime} \mathbf{u}^{\prime}: T s^{\prime} \bar{a}-k^{\prime} u^{\prime}$ ．

 ta，wa－żur，tâ ：Bo－dī－sa－tâ．

XX．Ra－gos，La－gos，and Sa－gos．
开 $\mathrm{Ra}, \mathrm{ka}$－tà，Ka．
可 Ra，ga－tā，G＇a．

Fi．Ra，nga－tā，$\grave{N} g a$ ．
勋 La，ka－tā，Ka．

삳 La，nga－tā，$\stackrel{\text { Ňga．}}{ }$
齐 $\mathrm{Sa}, \mathrm{ka}-\mathrm{t} \overline{\mathrm{t}}, \mathrm{K} a$ ．
줌 $\mathrm{Sa}, \mathrm{ga}-\mathrm{ta}, G a$ ．

In spelling，the Prefix is taken first，then the surmounting letter， then the $y a-t \bar{a}$ ，or ra－t $\bar{a}$ ，or other subjunct，then the vowel，then the affix or affixes．Thus ：－
 ḍu ；ḍung，nga，sa，Dung．

XXI．Miscellaneous Examples．
 na，ch＇èn；ra，gi－gu，ri；rin，na，rin；pa na－ro，po；ch＇a，deng－bu，ch＇e：PÄN－OH‘解， rin－Po－CH＇s，The Grand Lama of Tashi L＇ümpo in Tsang，usually called the Tashi Lama，and an incarnation of＇Ö＇－pag－me＇．
 paǵ；ma，deng－bu，me；mè＇，d́a，mè： ＇Ö＇－Pad́－Mè＇，Buddha Amitabha，or Boundless Light．
 Ta－lai La－ma，The Dalai Lama，or Spiritual Head of Tibet until Sir Frank Younghusband＇s entry into Lhassa．

ya, na-ro, Jo ; yong, nga, sa, Jong : Dit-yona (pronounced Ø̣̂̃n-Jona), Sikkim.
 bu, Je; ga, la-tã, la; la, gi-gu, li; ling, nga, ling: Do-Je-ling, or Dor-Je-lina, Darjeeling, or the Place of Ecclesiastical Sway; literally the Place of the Sovereign Stone.
 Kä' : Bö'-кй', Language of Tibet.
§ 22.-Transliteration.

For the system adopted in this work of transliterating Tibetan words into Romanized Equivalents see § 2.

The best method, no doubt, is the one that was adopted at the Vienna Congress of Orientalists, and which may be found exemplified in Rai Sarat Chandra Das Bahadur's Tibetan-English Dictionary. By that system each letter in a Tibetan word is transliterated, but a line is drawn under every letter that is not pronounced, or it is distinguished by special type from the letters that are pronounced. It is not adopted in this work, as it is really only necessary for purposes of scientific precision.

> §23.-Use of the Tibetan Dictionary.

The following appears to be the way in which the words in a

1.-According to the order of the $\eta^{\prime} \times \stackrel{A}{\cdot} \grave{K}_{\bar{A}-L I}$, or Consonantal Series of the. $\prod^{[7 /} \mathrm{K}_{\mathrm{A}}-\mathrm{K}^{\prime} \mathrm{A}$, regarded as Initials, or as they are sometimes called, Root letters, with the inherent vowelsound of $\mathcal{L V} A$. The first thing, therefore, that the student has to do, when he wants to look up a word, is to ascertain what its Initial letter is.

Then the words under each consonant, beginning for instance with $\eta^{*} K a$, are arranged thus :-
2. - The simple consonant, e.g. $\rceil 1$
3.-The simple consonant with subjuncts like $R^{\prime} \bar{a}, \iota_{\text {。 }}$ wariur,

4.-The simple consonant with affixes, single and double, for the order of which as amongst themselves, see § 16.
Then the same with subjuncts.
5.-Next, according to the foregoing order as regards their consonants, words qualified by the vowel-signs ${ }^{\circ}$ gi-gu, żhyab-kyu, ${ }^{\sim}$ Deng-bu, and ${ }^{\sim} N a-r o$, in that order.
6.-Simple consonant qualified by ya-tā alone.
7.-Ya-tā words in all orders down to 5 , inclusive.
8.-Simple consonant qualified by $\underset{\sim}{\sim} R a-t \bar{a}$ alone.
9.-Ra-tā words in all orders down to 5 , inclusive.
10.-Simple consonant qualified by $\lceil\mathrm{Ha}-\mathrm{ta}$ alone.
11.-Ha-tā words in all orders down to 5 , inclusive.
12.-Simple consonant qualified by la-tā alone.
13.-La-t $\bar{a}$ words in all orders down to $\tilde{5}$, inclusive.
14.-Foreign or other special words formed with the Reversed letters.
15.-Words with the Prefixes $\nabla^{\circ} ; 5^{\circ}, \nabla^{\circ}, \mathbb{F}^{\circ}$, and $R^{\circ}$, in that sequence, and each sequence arranged according to the foregoing orders.
16.-Consonant qualified by $R a-\check{g} o$.
17.-Ra-ğo words according to foregoing orders.
18.-Consonant qualified by La-ğo.
19.-La-go words according to foregoing orders.
20.-Consonant qualified by Sa-go.
21.-Sa-ğo words according to foregoing orders.
22.-No words with かு $L a$, as an Initial, and having any Superposed letter like $\mathcal{F}^{\prime}$ or $\mathbb{N}^{\circ}$, need be looked for under ar $^{\circ}$ La. They will only be found under the head of tne Superposed letter.

Words in $\mathbb{R}^{\circ} L a$, however, are found with qualifying vowel-signs, and such words may be looked for under Nㅏ La.
N.B.-Csoma de Körös's Dictionary is differently arranged.
§ 24.-Indicative and Differentlating Particles.
TKa. Used both in Literary Tibetan and in the Colloquial, and may have any of the following meanings, namely: The, All, Both, Together, The very, Just, Exactly, etc. Ex. :- $555^{\circ} \pi^{\circ}$ The Spring;
 Sometimes, in this connection, $\mathbb{R}^{\circ}$ is seen instead of $\Pi$ |
 together. In this connection sometimes replaces $\boldsymbol{\eta} \boldsymbol{\gamma}$
 reply) Yes, exactly, precisely, to be sure.

Sometimes its sole use is to differentiate between words that resemble each other, e.g. पारे $5^{\circ}$ Confidence; but बारेEN•川 Hood
 $\eta$, when used, is generally found attached to words ending in $\quad \pi$, $5^{\circ}, \nabla^{\circ}, \mathbb{N}^{\circ}$ and also in $\boldsymbol{F}^{\circ}$ and in vowels.
[4' $K^{\prime} a$. When this particle is used, it is generally found attached to
 ending in $\Gamma^{\prime}$, or $[\mathbb{N}$ |



Also sometimes used instead of $\prod^{\circ}$ as above explained.
$\mathbb{P r}^{\circ}$ also indicates the top, upper surface, or front of anything
 of a hill；ब｜fo Top，or head of a mountain，or pass；可界｜＂Head of cliff．
 as a Differentiating Particle with many roots．Ex．：－iNa＇A To disappear；but यू밈 Branch；95• Plain or Steppe；but
 guished from an effeminate person．

あ＇Ch＇a．Apart from its meanings as a word by itself，this Particle is


 possession，or the connection subsisting between a person and some thing，action，employment，place，etc．Ex．：－万र्रिक्ष A house，



 Lhassa，but 쿡N미 An inhabitant of Lhassa．

2．－When added to all Cardinal Numbers except बाई్వิ｜One，it forms the Ordinal Numbers．Thus，a｜zis Two，but alyata： Second．

3．－It is used also in connection with other enumerational expres－

 a cubit.
4.-It is the sign of the Infinitive Mood, the Verbal Substantive, and
 To preach. The or A preaching, Preaching, Preached. 位雷



 The truth was preached a long time ago.

The last example shows that 5 , added to a root, and helped out by the auxiliary $\mathbb{N}_{\overline{1}} \mathbb{F}^{\circ} \mathrm{E}^{\circ}$ To be, goes to form the Perfect Indicative Tense.
5. $\int^{\circ}$ is also used to distinguish the different meanings of ho-

6. -In the Colloquial it is often used instead of the supinal particle



 or Remembering myself not to be rich. Colloquially, [zdin

[50. Po. Indicates an agent. It is then sometimes, e.g. when annexed
 hearer.

It also expresses the idea of the Definite or Indefinite Article
 eye；wुल of wood：वबसंत्र $A$ or the road；मोदर्ते The poor．

Used with numerals it also performs the functions of the Definite
 tether．

 Dog．
$\boldsymbol{F}^{*}$ Wa．The form assumed by $\mathrm{Fl}^{\prime}$ when the root to which it is annexed


 tiers－man．

خें Bo，or Wo．The form assumed by $\bar{\lambda}$ when the root to which it is annexed ends in a vowel，or in $\mathbb{F}^{\prime}$ ， $\mathbb{N}^{\prime}, \boldsymbol{F}^{\circ}$ or $\mathcal{Q}^{\circ}$ Ex：－－


よ＂$M a$ ．An immovable particle after various roots of substantives．
 not always，it indicates the Feminine Gender．Ex．：－塑刑 $A$ mare．
えั Mo．Affixed or prefixed to noun roots，it generally indicates the



Attached to adjectives，it does not always indicate gender．Ex．




तें－Tse．A point，top，or edge．Also，however，an affix of Chinese origin．Ex．：－ $5 \prod \begin{aligned} & \text { बें } \\ & \text { ．Polish，lustre，brilliant to a point or degree ；}\end{aligned}$
 name of Confucius．
§．Ni．See § 27 ，2，on the Definite Article．
［．Nga．Indicate the Definite or Indefinite Article，but are not much


$\prod_{0} K u$.
［4＇ $\boldsymbol{K}^{\prime} u$
ajo $G u$ ．
5i Ngu．
すँ $N u$ ．
Б่̈ $B u, W u$ ．
5．$R u$ ．
징 $L u$ ．
2．＇u
び Yu．
Definite or indefinite and diminutive particles．Appa－ rently a re－duplication in（zhyab－kyu）of the final letter of the root．Ex．：－बु巨5．A or the mite；
 youth．But not always．Ex．：－太ेखुं A or the man－

§ 25．－The Cases and their Signs．
（N．B．－The student is advised to glance at the paragraphs and con－ jugations relating to the verb To Be．See post．）
The various relations in which a Tibetan Noun and Pronoun may stand to some other word in the sentence are nearly all expressed by
means of divers monosyllabic primitive partioles, and words compounded therewith, whioh perform the same functions as are performed by English Prepositions, but which, save for sundry Vocative Signs, are all Postpositional. These relations or cases are as follow :-

## I.-The Nominative Case.

Except in connection with Intransitive Verbs (Active; Neuter or Inactive; and Inceptive, i.e., implying a beginning or change of state), and also with the verbs 凶్ఠృ 『' $T_{o}$ be (the mere copula which is used
 to exist, to be present ; करनॅ" its negative form ; केन ${ }^{\circ}$ its emphatic or intensive form (hardly ever used), and one or two other forms of the verb To be used in Literary Tibetan; there is practically no such thing in Tibetan as a verb governed by the Nominative Case. The following is an instance in which, though the practice is irregular, it is allowable and common in the Colloquial to use the Nominative in the usual European way :-

## 

The more correct way would be :-

Honorifically :-



The subject, however, is always put in the Nominative Case in sentences like the following, where, though the verb is Transitive, it is also Passive :-



In such cases $\mathrm{ar}^{-} l a$ is optional, and may be omitted if desired.
The subject is always put in the Nominative Case in sentences like the following, where the verbs are Intransitive (active, neuter, or inoeptive) :-


The horses run.
I am going down to the bazaar.
It is raining.
The sun shines.
The chill sleeps.
The child wakes, or breaks from slumber.

Where, however, the verb is transitive, the Nominative Case is never used, but always the Agentive Case. See § 25, VI.

## II.-Tee Vocative Case.

There is practically no Vocative Case, but several polite expressions are often used by way of assent, dissent, or address. The commonest is $\mathrm{QA}_{\mathrm{A}}^{\mathrm{N}} \mathrm{N}^{\circ} \mathrm{LA}$, and its variants.
III.-The Objective or Accusative Case.

This is the same as the Nominative, with or without $\mathbf{*}^{\circ}$ LA, signifying As regards. Ex.:-
 him, as regards the girl. a loving is.

IV.-Genitive Case.

The signs are:-

गें Ǵr. used after words ending with | 0 |
| :--- | :--- | , or $5^{\circ}$

気 Kyı, used after words ending with $5^{\circ}, \boldsymbol{\nabla}^{\circ}$, or $\mathbb{N}^{\circ}$, or in the Colloquial after $\mathfrak{R F}^{\circ}{ }^{\circ}$ Dr, This.

$\left.\begin{array}{ll}\text { ஷें I } \\ \text { ※ें YI }\end{array}\right\}, \quad$ after vowels.
พิ. YI ,, in verse.
N.B. थों, शें, and तों may all alike be pronounced Ǵ in conversation.

> 1.-Possessive Aspect.

When the word to which the sign is annexed is in that part of the sentence which contains the subject, it should precede the chief substantive of the subject. Ex.:-

|  | The fame of Lhassa is great |
| :---: | :---: |


 Almighty is everywhere pervading.

2.-Qualificative Aspect.

When the word to which the sign is annexed is indicative of some quality, it may be regarded as an adjective; but, unlike Tibetan adjectives in general, it should precede whatever it qualifies. Ex.:-
 (a sweet-singing bird).



Tibet was formerly a hidden (or secret) land.
N.B.-The particle $\hat{\text { ¢े }} \mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{I}}$ (see § 27,2 ) has the effect of singling


English word Tibet seems to have originated from some phrase such as
 tinental, egg. German) ear the sound of $\mathcal{F}^{\circ}$ is very like $t$.

As to the adjectival use of the Genitive case-sign, see also $\$ 30$, I, (vi).
3.-Purposive Aspect.

For medicine the box, The medicine box.
 better still, simply 可田| pouch.

55아 [Aㅁ |
Moneybag.

A leather bag for dry barley flour.

## V. -The Dative Case.

1.- The only genuine Dative sign is $\boldsymbol{\sim}^{*}$ LA, which should be used in this sense after verbs of giving, shewing, speaking or telling, and teaching, and some others.

Ex.:-







 go?

2．－When the verb To be is used impersonally；for instance，in sentences intended to be the equivalent of English sentences beginning with the phrases，There is，There was，There has been，Tibetan requires that the word to which $\mathbf{D}^{\circ}$ La，when used，is annexed，should precede the chief substantive of the subject．With regard to the idiom for expressing the verb To have，Tibetans use the verb be present，To exist，in connection with the Dative in $\mathbf{N}^{-}$LA，after the manner of the Russians when the latter，instead of saying Ya imeyo， $I$ nave，say U menya yest，To me is，or To me there is．Ex ：－
 There is snow on that hill－top．

If the speaker has some uncertainty regarding the fact to which he is speaking，he will use the verb $9 \int_{0} \prod^{\circ}$ instead of ${ }^{2} 5^{\circ}$ Thus ：－


There is（I am almost sure）snow on that hill－top．

If he is not at all sure，but is only hazarding the statement，he will


 （or © W゙，）

There is（I understand）snow on that hill－top．

When There is，There was，etc．，is used indefinitely，ひ్జ్「 Yong， Will be，takes the place of the above，much as the future is employed by a Highlander in Scotland to express the present tense．Thus ：－
 अएごびพ will be，very many trees in that valley down there．

3．－The following examples also illustrate the verb To have ：－
 This man has parents．

used now．）

Yes，he has parents（emphatic）．

4．－The Dative instead of the direct construction may also be used thus：－
 ざさら1 Literally，To my mind your mother seems aged．

The Honorific form of this would be ：－


ar，La，is used to express for in sentences like the following ：－


About，or concerning，is also expressed by dr la．Thus ：－

 many affairs．

## VI．－The Agentive Case．

This case，which expresses the idea of anything being done by a person or thing，should always be used instead of the Nominative case with Transitive Verbs．The case－signs are as follow，and are annexed to the subject，that is to say，to the noun－substantive，the adjective if any，the definite or indefinite article，if any，or to the phrase constitut－ ing the subject．
N－ $\mathrm{S}_{\mathrm{A}}$ ，usable after vowels，or after a consonant sounding in in－ herent $\quad \mathbb{V}^{\circ} \cdot a$ ．This $\mathbb{N}$ is silent，but modifies the immediately preceding vowel－sound．See § 3.
बो $\mathbb{N}^{\circ}$ Git，used after words ending with $\boldsymbol{q}^{\circ}$ or $5^{\circ}$




Wิజ Yt used after words ending with vowels.
Wิ太 $\mathrm{Yt} \quad$ used in versification after vowels.
Examples:-
 शैंभुण







 बत्र्वा
 gस intl

If you had told me the truth I would have forgiven you.

Then the messenger pours out the wooing-beer for both the parents of the girl.
(Amundsen).
The two parents of the boy thus consulted (conversed).
(Amundsen).
2.-In connection with the Agentive Case it is convenient bere to
 used in Tibetan, much as $\leqslant \mathrm{k} K \bar{a} r$, or,$\leqslant \operatorname{sa} r$, is used in Persian to indicate a Doer. It may also be likened to the English affix Er, in words such as Beholder, Murderer, etc. Later on it will be fully dealt with in connection with the Verb. Here it is only briefly alluded to as a sort of Active Participle annexed to Verbal Roots. Ex.-

|  | Do-K'ann | The goer, He who goes. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Yong-K'An | The comer, He who comes. |
|  | DI-K'Än, | The writer, He who writes. |

It is found thus in the Literary Tibetan into which the New Testament has been translated:-



 (Heb. iii. 4).

But he that seeketh the glory of him that sent him, the same is true (John vii. 18).

It is also used adjectively, thus :-

The man who steals sheep.
The way in which it is used with the different tenses will be found explained in the paragraphs on The Pronoun (§ 31, IX, A), and The Verb (§ 38, V., D.), and in the Appendix of Conjugations.

## VII.-The Locative Case.

This case expresses relations of $S$ pace, but implies also the idea of Rest.

The common case-signs are the following primitive particles :-

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left.\begin{array}{cc}
\propto & L_{A} \\
\bar{\sigma} & \mathrm{~N}_{\mathrm{A}}
\end{array}\right\}: \operatorname{In}, O_{n}, A t, B y \text {, etc. }
\end{aligned}
$$

Sometimes the more Literary particles $5^{\circ}, \mathrm{Tv}, 5^{\circ}, \mathrm{D} \boldsymbol{0}, \mathfrak{5}^{\circ} \mathrm{Ru}$, I• R., 정 Su , are also met with.

Examples:-
П゙








文:

Please speak in Tibetan.

Does the chhörten remain by the shepherd's tree? forehead.

The following Colloquial examples illustrate the use of compound postpositions as expressive of the same Locative idea :-



Please do not stand in front of me.
 95ना



स



Sikhim is between Nipāl and Butān.

The house is near the river.

 ใรुग।
मून

万気かRT1

 legs．

The money is inside the leather bag．
The wolf is in the midst of the flock of sheep．

The city stands beside a big river．

The court of justice is near a pretty garden．

It will be seen that the above Locative postpositions are used with the Genitive Case，that is，they are connected by means of the Genitive sign with the substantive or other part of speech to which they refer．

Notice，however，the following constructions ：－




 2


The dog chases the hen round the house．

The load must pass through between the two posts．

The train，passing through the midst of the rocky hill，inside the constructed path，ran $=$ The train ran through the rock by the tunnel．

## VIII．－The Periodal or Durational Case．

This case expresses relations of Time．Its common signs are the same primitive particles as those which denote the Locative Case， namely ：－
$\left.\begin{array}{l}\mathcal{q}_{\mathrm{NA}}^{\mathrm{NA}} \\ \text { or LA }\end{array}\right\} A t$, In，During，etc．

Sometimes the sign is used alone，and sometimes it forms part of compound postpositions，or even of precedent adverbial expressions．

## Examples：－


 year．

## 人亠⿱八乂卩


I shall pay you within three months．

## 前•1

 प

At（or during）the first salutation Tibetans present ceremonial scarfs to each other．

The devil disappeared at dusk．


शैひّభ


 कणजेจ



I knew the doctrine of Buddha a long time ago．

I knew the Amban named Shanghai a short time ago．

At the same time（or At a certain time）he was Chinese Ambassa－ dor in Darjeeling．
Since that time，so I have heard， he has died．


 receive you，i．e．，grant admit－ tance．

At last you have arrived！

 On the way up to（i．e．before reaching or getting to）the hill top，you will be tired．
 க5•弟•51

In sentences like the following，where the durational signification

 hours．
 in English it suffices to say It has rained two hours，instead of for two hours．

> IX.-The Modal Case.

This Case is intended to include all that is connoted by the term Instrumental Case，and some other additional significations．The signs are ：－

耳跃 NÄ：By，Through，By way of，Via．
5「．D́ang：With，Against．
E＊SA（silent）：With，Because，Since，etc．Also the Participial idea．

|  | Kyèn－gyi |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Ch＇ir（Literary） | By，Through，On account of，By reason of， etc． |
| ¢5\％5 | Ch＇tr－du（Literary） |  |

Examples:-



Seize the horse by the reins.
If you catch the fowl, catch it by the legs.
If you grasp the fish, grasp it by the head.
The lamas spoke through trumpets.

We met (or fell in) with robbers on the road.
 an interview with the Regent.


 (for $\boldsymbol{\square}^{\circ}$ ) えे 51

Strike the nail with the hammer.
 account of, the beer-house.



 Tsang-pän-chhen, called the T sang-pan-chhen, called
Tashi Lama, came from Tashilhümpo via Darjeeling.
Our soldiers have fought with the enemy, or against the enemy.

The following is Literary from the New Testament :-
दोन छे

What question (dispute) ye with them?

Colloquially :-


Again:-
 It being I, etc.
Colloquially :-

The following also is Literary :-


## X.-The Ablative Case.

 fying From, From amongst, From amidst, Out of, etc., are usually assigned to this case; but inasmuch as, when carrying those significations, they really express the idea of Direction from, they have been placed under the heading Terminative Case.

REN LiAl however, possesses meanings other than Direction from.
Accordingly, مNa' Lä, and of NA, may be taken as the signs of the Ablative Case, as expressive of significations such as the following :-

মA` LÄ: Than, Except, Save, But, But for, Besides, etc.
$\bar{\sigma}^{\circ}$ NA (with negative): Unless, If..not.
Examples:-
 स्रूँ के थैर ।
 25才1 except for a few months, i.e. longer than a few months.

There was nobody in the fortress except one soldier.



 さे 1



When the Oriental possesses nothing but one piece of cotton cloth he is often happy.

Besides this there is no other.
Unless all the work is done you will get no pay. i.e. If travellers are robbed, you will all be punished.
 Ǵä-te (or G̛̈̈̈-TI')..NA, with a negative, If..not, or even the of NA

 Colloquially :-





Unless you repent.
Unless the dog is at the entrance door.
Unless the petition is presented.
Unless the agreement (bond) has been signed.

The following are Literary expressions used in the New Testament :-
 (Acts viii. 1).
$3 F^{\circ}$ etc.



Besides all this, between us and you is (being) a great gulf (Luke xvi. 26).



Whosoever shall put away his uife， except it be for fornication，i．e． fornication not having been committed．（Matt．v．32）．

These may be rendered Colloquially thus：－
 galdiof etc．



 स゙

Whosever shall put away his wife． except it be for fornication＝If anybody divorces his wife，forni－ cation not having been committed．

Besides all this，between us and you is（being）a great gulf，etc．

The expressions Apart from，and Rather than，are rendered thus ：－

 that I will give you nothing．

5GR・ロ・ผ్す1


I would rather give you tood than money．

Would give．

XI．－－The Terminative or Transitive Case．
This case denotes the relations of a noun or pronoun with reference to its Direction in Time or Space，either towards or from something men－ tioned in the sentence，and it may imply the idea of motion as well as that of rest．Under it come，as already stated，many expressions signi－ fying direction from，which in other books are assigned to the Ablative Case．

The signs of the case as thus defined are ：－

|  |  |
| :---: | :---: |
|  |  |
| 天 Ra \} after final vowels |  |
| §＇ Ru$\}$ ：after final vowels． | Direction Towards． |
| 式 So ：after final ${ }^{\text {a }}$ |  |
| Pr La：commonly used in the Colloquial after anything，and possessing the significations of all the above signs． |  |


| $55^{\circ}{ }^{\text {Dana }}$ |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| 可新 Nat | Direction From． |
|  |  |

Example：－

> 1.-Direction Towards.

习15．Bak－du ：Up to，Until，As far as，As long as．．not．

ラロバ5 Hitherto．

 it has been obtained．


 pany with．
 with wild beasts in the desert．

रगָ̃ar Kyi－пu ：Amongst，Amidst，Into the midst of．
 springs in amongst the twittering sparrows（little gray birds．）
बIG与゙ GÄ N－DU ：Towards．
के＂ wards the palace．

95．5．Nang－DU ：Into．
 into the water．
प्र415 T＇OG－TV ：In the direction of ；Towards．


घुप been sent to sea．


 hitherward．


ボక゙ MA－RU ：Down to．

＜compat＞ᄌ＜compat＞ᅥ＜compat＞＇Mar：Downwards，Down；XXP Year，Upwards，Up．


太N＂Su ：To，Towards．



 side of the road there are houses，on that side meadows．
 marched towards Tibet．




 my head．



## 2．－Direction from．

51．Dang：From．This is Literary．
 frontier．
 grain．
すズ Nä：From．
 crawled from between the bushes．
 under the table．
 Justice is close to（literally from）a pretty garden．

 5．9Nu to you．
₹ speak to him．
 there，or to that．
 －（New Testament）．

Colloquially ：－
 From the beginning it was not so．
 ラ ones must recite their books by（literally from）heart．－（Amundsen）． सAN＇LÄ：Out of．
 FスN用
§ 26．－Numerals．
 aland Dang－kyi（or Tsi－kyi）Ňam－dang，Arithmetical Enu． meration．

| English Figure． | Tibetan Figure． | Tibetan Name． | Romanized Equivalent． |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | 7 | पक्वेष्｜ | Chi＇． |
| 2 | 3 | －$\square_{\text {¢\％}}$ | Ňyī． |
| 3 | 2 | －${ }^{\text {Nad }}$ | Sum． |
| 4 | $\sigma$ | Б¢ิ่ | Z̆hyi． |
| 5 | $v$ | 잗 | Ňga． |
| 6 | s | $5{ }^{\circ}$ | Du＇． |
| 7 | $v$ | －50 | D̆ün． |
| 8 | $L$ | 日弐50 | Ğyä’． |
| 9 | Q | 54］ | Gu． |
| 10 | 20 |  | Chu，or Chu t＇am pa． |
| 11 | 72 |  | Chug－chi＇． |
| 12 | 23 |  | chug－kyi． |
| 13 | 73 | －న్రువ저아 | Chug－sum． |
| 14 | ge |  | Chub－žhyi |
| 15 | 24 | ロส゙｜ | Chö－riga． |
| 16 | 25 | －${ }^{\circ} \mathrm{S}^{\prime}$ | Chu－du＇． |
| 17 | 20 | ■ | Chub－dün． |


| English Figure. | Tibetan <br> Figure. | Tibetan Name. | Romanized Equivalent. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 18 | 26 |  | Chob-gyä'. |
| 18 | 18 | - ${ }^{\circ} 5^{\circ}$ | Chu-gu. |
| 20 | 20 |  | Nyi-shu, or Nyishu t'am-pa. |
| 21 | $3)$ |  | $\left\{\begin{array}{l} \text { Nyi-shu tsag-chi'. } \\ \text { Nyer-chi'. } \\ \text { Tsag-chi'. } \end{array}\right.$ |
| 22 | 33 |  | $\left\{\begin{array}{l} \text { Nyi-shu tsaǵ-hyi. } \\ \text { Tsaǵz-hyi. } \end{array}\right.$ |
| 30 | 30 |  | Sum-chu, or Sumchu t'am-pa. |
| 31 | 23 |  | $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text { Sum-chu sog-chi'. } \\ \text { Sog-chi'. }\end{array}\right.$ |
| 40 | $\cdots$ |  | Zhyib-chu, or Žhib-ohu t'ampa. |
| 41 | E) |  | $\left\{\begin{array}{l} \text { Žhib-chu zhye-chi. } \\ \text { źhye-chi'. } \end{array}\right.$ |
| 50 | vo |  | Ňgab-chu, or Nagabchu t'ampa. |
| 51. | $\cdots$ |  | $\left\{\begin{array}{l} \text { Ngab-chu nga-chi'. } \\ \text { Nga-ohi'. } \end{array}\right.$ |
| 60 | so | Saldi, or | Dug-chu, or Dugchu t'am-pa. |
| 61 | S) |  | $\left\{\begin{array}{l} \text { Dug-chu re-chi' } \\ \text { Re-chi'. } \end{array}\right.$ |


| English Figure． | Tibetan Figure． | Tibetan Name． | Romanized Equivalent． |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 70 | 20 |  | D̈̈n－chu，or Dün－ |
| 71 | U7 |  <br>  | $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text { Dön－chu dön－chi＇．} \\ \text { Dön－chi＇．}\end{array}\right.$ |
| 80 | LO |  | Ğyä＇－chu，or Gyä＇． chu t＇am－pa． |
| 81 | 40 |  | $\left\{\begin{array}{l} \text { Gyä'-chu gyarchi'. } \\ \text { Gya-chi'. } \end{array}\right.$ |
| 90 | $8^{\circ}$ |  | Gub－chu，or Gub－ chu t＇am－pa． |
| 91 | （3） |  | $\left\{\begin{array}{l} \text { Ğub-chu go-chi'. } \\ \text { Go-chi'. } \end{array}\right.$ |
| 100 | 200 |  | Gya，or Gya－t＇am－ pa． |
| 101 | n0\％ |  | Gya Ğdang chi＇． |
| 200 | 200 |  | Nyib－gya，or Nyib－ gya． |
| 300 | 200 | 처ำ気 | Sum－gya． |
| 400 | ש¢0 |  | Žhyib－ğya． |
| 500 | voo | 㽞口可 | Ňgab－gya． |
| 1000 | 2000 |  | ＇Tong，or Tong－t＇a＇． |
| 5500 | r，roo |  |  ngab－gya． |
| 10，000 | 20，000 |  | $\mathrm{T}^{\prime} \mathrm{i}$ ，or $\mathrm{T}^{\prime} \mathrm{i}-\mathrm{t}^{\prime} \mathrm{a}^{\prime}$＇． |
| 100，000 | 200，000 |  | Bum，or Bum－t ${ }^{\text {c }} \mathrm{a}^{\prime}$ ． |
| 1，000，000 | 2，000，000 | 玉＂W゙ | Sa－ya． |
| 10，000，000 | $70,000,000$ | 入̀か | J＇e－wa． |


| English． | Tibetan． | Romanized equivalent． |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 100 millions | 55＇팡 | Dung－ch＇ur． |
| 1000 millions |  | ＇T＇er－bum． |
| 10，000 millions |  | T＇er－bum oh＇em－po． |
| 100，000 millions． | 呮㐭可 | F＇ag－ti＇ |
| A billion |  | T＇aǵctic i＇ch＇em－po． |
| 10 billions | 天マロザ | Rab－ṭam． |
| 100 billions |  | Rab－tam ch＇em－po． |
| 1000 billions |  | Tam． |
| 10，000 billions |  | Tram－ch＇em－po． |
| 100，000 billions | $5{ }^{\text {T }}$ | Tì＇． |
| 1，000，000 billions | $5 \stackrel{1}{\text { ¢ }}$ | Tī ch＇em－po． |

N．B．－To the above succeed progressive numbers increasing by multiples of ten up to sixty enumerations，counting 100 millions as the ninth．These sixty enumerations are used for astronomical and astro－ logical purposes．Sanskrit equivalents exist only up to the fifty－first enumeration．See Rai Sarat Chandra Das Bahadur＇s Dictionary， article $\boldsymbol{A} E \mathbb{V}^{*}$ Grafas（Dang）．
 Ňam－dang，Alphabetical Enumeration．

The following system of Numerical Notation is employed by Tibetans in their Registers，Indices，and the like．It only goes up to 300，and consists of an adaptation of the $\Pi^{\dagger}$ ஷें．It may be regarded as the equivalent of our own method of Notation by means of the Roman letters．


NOTES:

## 1.-Pronunciation.

The Colloquial custom of pronouncing the prefix of a second syllable with, and as though it were part of; the preceding syllable, is really in-
 Eleven, pronounced Chớ-chi' in Colloquial, is pronounced Cro-chr' in
 Colloquial, is pronounced Cho-žнYI in Literary Tibetan.

## 2.-Affixes.

gater T'am-pa, signifies full, or complete, and is almost exclusively used with the full tens, up to and inclusive of a hundred; meaning thereby a collective body, or whole lot, of any of those numbers. It is, however, similarly, but much less frequently, applied to numbers below ten.

After a hundred and with thousands Ezㅓㄱㅠ T'A' is used. Also
 a week; 쿡켜게 DA-T‘A', a month.

With numbers above thousands है' Ts'o ; is used. $^{\text {a }}$.
As regards all these affixes, however, their use or non-use is quite optional.

> 3.-Conjunctions.

Note that where units are connected with some multiple of ten, the conjunction used is different for each series. In the 20 series it is


 hundreds it is $5^{-}$bang. It would not, however, be wrong to use 55' D́ang in all cases. In Literary Tibetan both $5^{5^{\circ}}$ DaNG, and one of the other conjunctions (usually) $\mathrm{Fr}^{\circ} \mathrm{Ts}$, are used together. Thus
 Colloquial.

 like, are very often heard instead of the longer forms, क्रु हु Nyi-shu-tsadó-CHI', 21, etc.

When dates are being stated or enumerated, the $\mathbb{F}^{\circ} \mathrm{TsA}$, or $5^{\circ}$ Dang in the 20 series is dropped, and the form with $\overline{3} 5 \cdot$ Nyer is

4.-The Indefinite Article, bee § 28.

## 5.-Approximate Numbers.

Expressions like two or three, nine or ten, are rendered by putting


add रुषा CHI＇，a or an，to any of these expressions．Thus，可发种


Another method is to employ the adverb ₹＇д＂tsam，About，Just

 Tsar，or Ragirpr Dam－la，signifying nearly，almost．In these oases the adverb follows the numeral it qualifies．

## 6．－Ordinal Numbers．

The first is rendered 5［． Je－dang－po．With these exceptions the ordinals are merely the cardi－ nals plus the particle $\mathbb{P A}$ ．Ex．$\ddagger$ ginar ŇyI－pa，The second；



## 7．－Distributive Numbers．

When simple numerals are repeated in juxtaposition，e．g． 미ㅊㅓㅒ미저아 Sum－sum，Three－three，the meaning may be either three each，or three at once，or three at a time，or in threes，according to the way the sentence is framed．For instance，phrases like Three at a time，or In threes，or One at a time，are rendered by help of the expression
 Thus：－



They set out in threes，or three at a time．
They arrived one by one，or one at a time．

Expressions like＇Three each，Two each，One each，are rendered by


Thus:-


 Seventy-one, only the last number of the compound is repeated. Ex. :रून्वण or In seventy-ones.

> 8.-Aggregates.

Expressions like The two together, or Both, or All three, or The whole ten, may be rendered with the aid of the particles $\prod^{\top} \mathrm{KA}$, or
 Both, or The two together; <compat>ᄆ<compat>ᅵ<compat>N<compat>ᅥ<compat>ᄋ<compat>ᄅ SUM. PO, All three, or The three together; ${ }^{4}{ }^{\circ} \mathbf{J}^{\circ}$ Gd-cina, The whole nine.

घे Po, thus affixed, may also signify the aforesaid, if the context so requires.
9.-Fractions.

These are usually expressed by adding the word $\boldsymbol{\sigma}^{\prime} \mathrm{CH}_{\mathrm{A}} \mathrm{i}, \mathrm{Part}$, to the cardinal, which is sometimes put in the Genitive Case. Thus:-



 With a half，two．The latter is the commoner usage in the Colloquial．

 $\frac{3}{4}$ ths four．

The leader received one－tenth of the booty．

10．－Adverbial Cardinal Numbers．
Expressions like Once，Twice，Thrice，Four times，etc．，are rendered






Another word with the same signification，as ©゙下＇T＇sar and


Other expressions that may here be mentioned are ：－
abran＇Lam－sang ：At once，Forthuith，Straightway，Immediately．

〔．

だよ ${ }^{\text {Ts＇}}$ er，A separate time or occasion，or instance．





Once upon a time, or Once, or One day, referring either to the past




## 11.-Adverbial Ordinal Numbers.

These are formed by adding $\mathcal{F}^{\cdot} \mathrm{RA}_{\mathrm{A}}$, to the $\bar{\Downarrow}$ Po, or $\mathbb{\Sigma}^{\cdot} \mathrm{PA}_{\mathrm{A}}$, of the ordinals. Ex. :-



12.-Definite and Indefinite Numerals.

Among these may be classed the following :-




 and 今ैwfo Chi-yang.
 negative)-None, Nobody, Nothing.

Examples.
A"
玉ेड।


 मेंथन

None of these things will suit me. do.

Expressions like $A$ whole (something), An entire (something), $A$ complete (something), A full (something), are rendered by 매ㄷㅐㅣ

 of at all in such cases. Ex. :-



This is not a complete story.


## AT VF

 Thus:-



 appeared.

All the women were frightened.
 They all.



So also, in connection with weights and measures and the Tibetan monetary system, ₹ Do, is used instead of $7 / \overline{\mathrm{F}} \mathrm{F} \boldsymbol{r} \mathrm{NyP}$, Two, and signifies $A$ couple. Otherwise the word for a couple is $\boldsymbol{\Phi}^{\prime} \mathrm{CH}^{\prime} \mathrm{A}$.

But a phrase like Two-legged, or Three-legged, is rendered with the
 possessed of.



## 13.-Noun Substantives.

$\tilde{末}^{\circ}$ Ts'o, the Plural-sign used in the Colloquial, is never expressed, either in speech or in writing, after a numeral adjective, or numeral adjectives, the noun-substantive thereby qualified always remaining in the singular. Ex. :-



## 14.-Notation by Letters.

The use of the T"मígar'dgen Ka-k'ai Ham dang, or Alphabetical Enumeration, has already been explained (See§ 26 II). In this connection, when references in Indices, or Registers, or to quotations from learned works are being cited, it is customary to qualify the numeral
 the first denotes the Book, Register, Index, or the like, to which reference is being made, and the last two denote that the particular quotation or citation is to be found in some particular Book, etc.

Ex.:-




## CHAPTER II.

## ETYMOLOGY.

§ 27.-The Definite Article.

1. The Definite Article The (which is really only an abbreviation of That) is represented in Tibetan in various ways, the principal being the words RFं DI, and $\overline{\mathcal{F}}^{\circ} \dot{\mathrm{D}} \mathrm{E}$, of which the former is usually said to mean This, and the latter That.

Properly, $R \hat{f}$ or $\overline{\mathcal{F}}$ when used at all, should alpays follow the noun or adjective which it distinguishes.

As a rule it is only used when the distinguishing or demonstrative idea is intended to be conveyed.

Examples:-


 That pretty girl.

As a matter of fact Tibetans altogether discard the article in conversation, unless they really desire to express the demonstrative or distinguishing idea.

Examples:-


A distinction, however, in the use of Rर今ं and $\hat{F}^{\circ}$ is made between the nearer and the remoter relation, in regard both to time and space.

For instance, when the article is intended to distinguish some person or thing already referred to, but to whom or to which reference is again being made, then, on the occasion of the second or any subsequant reference, Tibetans use $\overline{\mathcal{F}}^{\bullet}$ De; R角. Dr having been used on the occasion of the first reference.

Example:-

The man has arrived (referring to somebody already mentoned).
Notice also how $\left\{\overline{\mathcal{F}}\right.$ and $\overline{\mathcal{F}}^{-}$are used in a phrase like this :-

 yesterday.

So, if on the occasion of the first reference, the object distinguished was a distant object, then $\overline{\mathcal{F}}$ would be used; $\{\hat{\mathfrak{f}}$ being employed to distinguish a near or present object. Ex. :-
 at a distance) is the messenger
 who came yesterday.

When, moreover the article distinguishes first one and then another of two objects, both of which are present, and which are being contrasted, or to which an alternative reference is being made, then, in the case of the one, $R \hat{F}$ would be used, and, in the case of the other, $\overline{\text { F. }}$ Ex. :-
 रे 51 can go (will go).

Practically, therefore, in addition to representing the article The, RF. and $\overline{\mathcal{F}}$ respectively also represent the distinguishing adjectives This and That. They also respectively represent This one and That one ; he, she, it.

## Plural.

 The, These, They: and that of $\hat{\mathrm{F}}^{\cdot}$ is $\hat{\mathrm{F}}^{-\dot{\delta}}$ (pronounced Dex-Ts'o) The, Those, They.

Both articles, however, are often used in the singular to distinguish collective nouns. In such cases they precede the word they distinguish. Ex. :-

|  | These three |
| :---: | :---: |
| รัำ1 | Those five. |
| R509\%N゙351 | All these. |
|  | All those. |

The following is Literary :-



Where a plural noun is qualified by an adjective, and the whole is distinguished by the article, it is the article which takes the plural sign ฝّ. Ts'o, and it is the ฝै which takes whatever case-sign there may be.

Ex.:-
 शิ"स్ర
2. Another method by which the Definite Article is represented is by using the particle $\overline{\text { oे }} \mathrm{Ni}$; but this is rather Literary than Colloquial. In a long and involved sentence it may be placed after the principal noun, or noun-phrase, so as to distinguish it prominently. It may also be used to emphasize a particular word or expression, and may even be employed in addition to R辛 or $\overline{\mathcal{F}}$ :

Ex．：－

केरी से － व（G）TNはTE1

The twelve ra－gos（or ra－heads）．
Mankind are the noblest of all animals．

And the word was with Gol （John i．1．）

3．The functions of the Definite Article are sometimes performed by the particles $\mathbb{E}^{\circ}$ PA and $\overline{\chi^{\prime}}$ Po，when affixed to numerals．（See § 26，Notes 6，8，14．）

4．The particles $\overline{\jmath^{\prime}} \mathrm{PO}, \mathbb{I}^{\prime} \mathrm{PA}, \mathbb{A}^{\prime} \mathrm{K}^{\prime} \mathrm{A}$ ，etc．，as performing the function of the Definite Article in connection also with noung and adjectives，are used when the idea of individuality，or definiteness，is

 They are also discarded in enumerations like the following ：－

ふे बだ
勇｜क्｜ $\mid$ 亿文｜Birth，Old age，Sickness，Death．
The conjunction $5^{\circ}$ DaNa，And，is also discarded in such ex－ pressions．

The particles under notice and conjunctions are also discarded in enumerations of nouns that are in apposition or contrast．Ex．：－

|  | Hope and Fear． |
| :---: | :---: |
| 5勿戓勿｜ | Virtue and Vice |
|  | Heaven and Earth |

 hope，the particle is omitted from the first noun，₹े．$\underbrace{\circ} R e-w a$ ，and annexed only to the second．

Sometimes however a phrase is contracted and the particle omitted in both its members．Ex．：乏̀ $\prod^{*}$ The pillar of hope．

5．The student may also be reminded of the various affixes set out at the end of $\S 24$ ，since they too occasionally perform the func－ tions of the Definite Article．

> § 28.-The Indefinite Article.

1．ठेसा $A, A n$ ，Some，is a modification of बनठेषा One，and is seen in the following forms，which may be used even in the Colloquial， if it is desired to be very correct，though as a matter of fact


领 after final $\nabla^{\circ} ; \boldsymbol{F}^{\circ}$ ，or $\boldsymbol{\nabla} \mid$

१ิक्ष＂after final $\mathbb{N}$｜
2．Being an adjective when it qualifies a noun，and an adverb when it qualifies an adjective，its place in the sentence is immediately after the noun，or noun and adjective，that it qualifies．Ex．：－

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 5ंबิष ( or 甜) ) A horse. }
\end{aligned}
$$

3．डेषा and not the noun or adjective to which it is annnexed，takes the case－sign，but only in what we would call the Nominative．In the other cases తิषा is usually dropped．Ex．：－
 コヨล゙びペ51

4. Annexed to approximate numerals, it signifies colleotiveness,

Thus :-

 soldiers.
5. Used with the adverb đ̛ð' Tsam, About, it signifies Some. Thus:-




A few, Solely, Only, Alone, may be rendered in Colloquial by 亏َन हैं
 Literature by R
6. Affixed to Interrogative Pronouns, the Article signifies (in Literary Tibetan) Whoever, Whatever, Whichever, Anyone, Anything. Thus:-
 even regard, etc. (S.C.D.), i.e. anyone who, etc.
 85911 There is nothing (anything, with negative) in it.

The Article is also used thus in Literature :-
 रेंबิव" §ेंशेगणす1 Once, on some occasion, some time.

7. Affixed in any of its appropriate forms to a verbal root, it imports in Literature the Imperative Mood as addressed to servants and inferiors, and also the Hortative and Optative Moods. Thus :-


In the Colloquial also it is frequently used to express an emphatic order, and commonly takes the form र्विश Si', though it would be more correct to say वेषा SHI', बेषां ZंHyi', or रेण CHI', according to rule. Ex.:-



## 

$$
\begin{gathered}
\text { § 29. -The Noun. } \\
\text { A.-Structure. }
\end{gathered}
$$

1. The Tibetan Noun ends in either a consonant or a vowel, and is either :-
(a) A Monosyllable without any affixed particle, and either without or with any vowel-sign, head-letter, subjunct or prefix. Ex. :-




##  Hair (Human, on head).

(b) A Monosyllable, simple or complex, with an affixed





 Ram.

Sometimes, however, the particle does not indicate gender. Ex.:-




Sometimes the particle serves merely to differentiate the meanings of roots otherwise similarly or somewhat similarly spelt. Ex.:-




If the particle is either $\breve{V}^{\circ}, \nabla^{\circ}, \overline{\Sigma^{\prime}}$, or $\bar{\sigma}^{\prime}$, it may be and often is dropped (especially when followed by an adjective), without affecting the meaning of the word. Ex. :-


Some of such particles perform the functions of Diminutives Thus, in the case of 8 , the inherent $\mathcal{N}$, or 闵, of the final or the
only consonant of the noun, is turned into $\underset{\widehat{k}}{ }$, and is followed by the particle. Ex.:-

In other cases the final consonant, if a $\quad$ 行, is cut off the noun, and turned into a second syllable, to which Źhyab-ky.u is added. Ex. :-



In other cases the Diminutive particle is simply added to the
 Sack : 더궁 Sacklet.

Another way of expressing the Diminutive is to qualify the noun by the adjective बुरं Small. Ex. :-

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ने }
\end{aligned}
$$

Or lastly-
(c) A Dissyllable, or even a Polysyllable, either without or with a particle. Those nouns, and especially the polysyllabio nouns, which are mostly proper names, and sometimes even amount to phrases, are often comparatively modern words which have either gradually developed or been deliberately compounded out of originally simple elements., Ex.:-




 (Literary), Butterfly.
N.B.-Words with the definite particles $\Sigma^{\circ}$, $\overline{\mathrm{Er}}$, etc., are generally used without the article R₹₹ं, or $\overline{\mathcal{F}}$., unless the latter is intended to express This or That.
2. Besides the particles above referred to, mention may be made of小मक్ర K'AN, which, annexed to substantives or verbal roots, is extensively used'in the Colloquial to signify a person who, in some capacity or character, is connected with some particular act, state, or thing. Ex. :-

## 




In book-language the following may be found :-


 agriculturist, raïat.

Such compounds in 헤무 (at least in the Literary language) may
 only of the definite or indefinite article but also of gender. Ex. :-



Ex. :-


A doer, The doer.

Sometimes, even in the Colloquial, both $\overline{5} 5^{\circ}$ and समझक are used together, either with or without the Indicative Particles $\boldsymbol{4}^{\circ}, \overline{4}, \mathbb{R}^{\circ}$, से, though in the Colloquial these are commonly discarded. Ex. :-

Literary.

N.B.—When RF, or $\hat{\mathcal{F}}$ or the indefinite article $\hat{\delta} \overline{1}$ is used with any of the above, the indicative particle is discarded, e.g. :-

Rस्ने

Colloqutal.



円N＂ß్ర

4．Эif；however，is not the only auxiliary that takes the affix 8 ㄱpo in this way．There are others；for instance，取 Ex．：－




 are very similar to those of the Urdu word y，wālā，or the Persian

 Water－carrier，Bhīsti；5®피 Horseman，etc．

5．Another common affix of a similar nature annexed to noun－


|  |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| ¢ ごa気 | Boot－maker． |
| 「ベロジワ | Carpenter． |
|  | Goldsmith． |
|  | Silversmith． |
| シロズスがロ゙ | Coppersmith |

6．Abstract Nouns．
In the Colloquial these are seldom used，resort being generally had


 good. When, however, an abstract noun is used, it can be formed in two ways. First, by placing in juxtaposition the roots of two adjeo-


 so on. Secondly, by affixing त̄ँav Lo, to the root of any adjective, e.g. 머Naraiky Brightness, Clearness, from
 Good.

In Literary Tibetan abstract nouns are formed by adding $\mathrm{F}^{\circ}$ Nyr', to the adjective in its full form, that is, not the mere root, but the root plus one of the indicative particles. Ex. :-








B.-Inflexion.

The Tibetan Noun-Substantive is inflected in relation to :-1.-Gender.

The names of all males, females and inanimate objects are naturally
masculine，feminine，and common respectively，egg．，ฌे－Man（m．）；

 prefixed or affixed，are generally（in the last two cases always）masculine． Ex．：－

펌다 Pupil or novice in a monas－
ড্ৰুが亠 King，Regent，Temporal Ruler，Rajah．


च＂켣 Bull．

But sometimes nouns in $\boldsymbol{F}^{\circ}$ or Ex．：－


웅․․ Patch．

ट्यॅ स्यवां Boar．
ぼEA Father．

बだぶ Official chief．
お゙べ Grandson．
च̄ or $\boldsymbol{च}^{\circ}$ or $\overline{\text { ar }}$ are common．

Rप্तुম゙ひ Traveller．
बINE゙『＇Secret．

A・オ゙ Liquid．
7．7．Leather．
－ ar $^{-1}$ Bitter buck－wheat．

Nouns with $\begin{array}{r} \\ \text { affixed，or with } \\ \text { से affixed or prefixed are gene－}\end{array}$ rally feminine．Ex．：－

気天开 Mare．
ख్ర＇వr Mother．
（92．5＂히 Maidservant．


जु•స్ Daughter，girl．


But が and ฝे• $^{-}$do notalways denote the feminine gender．Ex．：－

| ल゙హ | \％\％${ }^{\circ}$ |
| :---: | :---: |
| 517＊＇Lotus． | 玄＇おं Chūmbi． |
|  |  |
| 칭히 Bean． |  |
| ¢－ |  |
| घुエス Spoon． | 毣込 Fun． |
| REDTIT＇Shovel，spade． |  |
|  |  |
|  | च్రn＇z＇Knee． |

Masculine nouns may be turned into feminine nouns by substituting a feminine affix for a masculine one．Ex．：－

界ㅈN티 A man of Lhasa．
牙피•․․ An Indian．
ジर゙て A Tibetan．

মূ＇పे＇A Nepāli．

둔Nㅊ A woman of Lhasa． पू피제 A woman of India．

 মA두 A Nepāli woman．

2．－Number
（a）There are several signs in Tibetan denoting the plural number， e．g．－
末ో T＇so．This is the sign commonly used now in the Colloquial with any kind of noun or adjective．
（b）fixir Nam．This is Literary，and is seldom if ever heard in the Colloquial．It is largely used，for instance，in the Tibetan

things or persons are referred to separately from others, e.g.


(d) Jवण Cha'. Another book term. Used also in Sikhim and

(e) No plural sign at all need be used when, from the context, it is clear that the plural number is implied. In such cases the noun remains in the singular number. Ex: :-
 lamas in Lhasa. Or, Lhasa (I believe) has many lamas.
(f) When, however, the plural sign is expressly used, it, and not the noun, nor the adjective, if any, takes the case-sign. Ex. :-

(g) When expressly used, the plural sign comes after the noun if there is no adjective and no article, definite or indefinite. Ex. :-

(h) When there is only an adjective after the noun, the plural sign is annexed to the adjective, not to the noun. Ex. :-

(i) If, however, the adjective be used as an attribute predicated of the noun, then the plural sign is annexed to the noun, not to the adjective. Ex.:-
( $k$ ) If the noun be distinguished by an article, or distinguished by an article and also qualified by an adjective, the plural sign is annexed to the article.

Ex．：－


## 3．－Case．

By way of supplementing what has already been said on this subject in $\oint 25$ ，examples are now given of the Declension of Nouns
 and ${ }^{\circ}, \mathbb{K N}^{\circ}$, ＇$^{\circ}$ or

The particular postpositions given are，of course，only examples out of many that might be used．

I．－Noun ending in a Vowel．
（i）Singular．
豕 ${ }^{(7)}$ Month，or Moon．
Nom．
Voc．
Acc．
쿸․ Month．
Gen．島『रि or घ•ய్ Of month．

Dat．To month，or moon．



Abl．$\quad$ Finlay $\quad$ Than month or moon．


## Plural．

## สెコヨ・ Months，Moons．






Per．羿ゴக゙ゥ・ In or during months．
Mod．$\quad$ ．$\square$ ．
Abl．

Than months or moons．
Term．

Until months：as far as moons．
（ii）Similar with Definite Article．

Singular．
今ิส Sun or Day．

N.B. -ln Colloquial the Definite Article is as a matter of fact seldom used.

## Plural.


(iii)-Similar with Indefinite Article.
₹র্মীब"चबवेण A monastery.


N．B．－－In conversation रेचा；，बิमा，and बेबा，in this sense is usually dropped in all cases except the Nominative，or Agentive．
（iv ）－Similar with a higher Numeral．
Nom．
Voc．
Acc．


Seven angels．
Gen．
 Of seven angels．

Agent．
※゙グウ
By seven angels．
Dat．
2．3．4790

To seven angels．
（v ）－The same with a Definite Particle．



Dat．$\quad$ से 3 ．
（vi）The same in the Singular with Cardinal．

（vii）Similar with Definite Article．

Agent. $\quad$ By the first angel.
Dat. $\quad$ To the first angel.
etc., etc.
(viii) When, as is sometimes the case, the adjective precedes the noun, the former must be put in the genitive case, and the case-nign must be attached to the noun, or to the definite or indefinite article, if any, or to the plural sign, if any. Ex. :-


$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { II. --Noun ending in af, or E' } \\
& \text { शुपा Sheep. }
\end{aligned}
$$


III.-Noun ending in $\boldsymbol{F}^{\circ}$, $\boldsymbol{\square}^{\circ}$ or $\mathbb{N}$

Declined like any other noun, save that the genitive sign is


Declined like any other noun, save that the genifive sign is
 that in Colloquial it is allowable to pronounce all these signs बों and बी
§ 30.-The Adjeotive.
I.-Form and Place.
(i) There is little or no structural difference between the noun and the adjective. In fact, the latter may, for the most part, be regarded merely as a noun performing qualifying functions with respect to some other noun or verbal substantive.

As a rule the adjective follows the noun, and then it is the adjective and not the noun which takes the case-sign. If the adjective is distinguished by a following article, definite or indefinite, or a demonstrative pronoun, it is the article or the pronoun and not the adjective which takes the case-sign. So, the adjective, and not the noun, takes the sign of the plural, if there is no article or demonstrative pronoun If there is, the article or pronoun takes the sign.

If, as is sometimes the case, the adjective precedes the noun, the adjective is put in the genitive case, and the case-sign is annexed to the noun, or to the article, if any, or to the plural sign, if any.

Examples:-
 स間に?
(ণ)

ম पघ
 ₹
文云ち

These beautiful white beasts of prey kill other wild animals．

Those crimson clouds are very beautiful．
（ii）A very common practice in Colloquial is to turn what we would call a relative clause into an adjectival phrase．Ex．：－

 Literally，the wolf－killing man．


 difficult to understand，for Colloquially it may express the passive as
 only The man who kills or killed，but also the man who was or has been killed．Probably the difficulty arose with the alleged Colloquial custom of using the perfect root of most verbs even in the present tense．If only that custom were not in vogue，it would be possible to use present roots in present tenses，and perfect roots in past tenses，and confine the use of $\operatorname{sND}^{\circ}{ }^{\circ}$ to the active voice，and use the past participle of the verb for the passive voice alone．Ex．：－
 इस पबरे।
 समतऩर्दा


This can be done, of course, even as things are; nevertheless it
 may also signify The man who is, or was, or has been, killed. Under these oiroumstances the context alone can decide what the intended meaning really is.

See $§ 31$, IX, A, on the use of the different roots of the auxiliary
 the Passive Voice.
(iv) The Relative Idea is also frequently expressed by turning a participial clause into an adjectival phrase. Ex. :-

 growing) will eat anything it gets.

 is dead. Literally, The yester-day-by-you-sent man is dead.

The participle, being here an adjective, may also follow the noun. Thus:-


Now, let another adjective be inserted, thus :-



The good man whom you sent yesterday is dead.

Or thus:-


## 

The negative is inserted thus :-

 send yesterday is dead.

If we desired to be very correct as regards the particles annexed to adjectival roots，we would use $\overline{\mathrm{E}}$ ，or $\Sigma^{\prime}$ ，with a masculine noun，
 with the Indefinite Article，and $\overline{\mathrm{j}}$ ，with the Definite Article，when masculine nouns are concerned ；while 栌，may be used with either the Indefinite or the Definite Article when the noun is feminine．In common parlance $\frac{20}{}$ is often pronounced $p u$ ．

Ex．：－

|  | A black dog |  | $A$ or the black bitch． |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | The white horse |  | $A$ or the white mare． |

But，as a matter of fact，these distinctions are not observed Collo－ quially，and a Tibetan would express himself thus ：－－－

हिवायेत्वा।






A black dog．

The white horse．

A black bitch．

The white mare．

However，there are many adjectives which，even in Colloquial，are seen in $\boldsymbol{y}^{*}$ and $\boldsymbol{F}^{*}$ without reference to gender．Ex．：－－

|  | Mad，insane． | 㦴可步 | Wet． |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Necessary，needful． | ボち听ジ | Wrong，incorrect． |
|  | New． | お゙エズ | All． |
|  | Old． |  | Ordinary，vulgar． |
| －199\％ひ | Young． | 㮣近 | Sham． |



|  | Previous, former |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | Clean. |

There are also one or two seen in Ex. :-

|  | Sweet. |
| :---: | :---: |
| प10 | Cold, chilly. |
| 57180 | Joyous. |

In the Literary language the adjective, in its root form alone, is often seen immediately preceding the noun. Ex. :-

| 可它" | Black dog. |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | Black bitch |

So, when the adjective has a particle and precedes the noun, Literary Tibetan follows the same rule as obtains in the Colloquial, of putting the adjective in the genitive case. Ex.:-

|  | A black dog. |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | The black dog. |
|  | A or the black bitch. |

But even in the Colloquial it is allowable, for brevity's sake, to form adjectival expressions by placing before a noun an adjective minus its particle. Ex. :-
 बी.रे 5

Instead of :-

To my mind, etc.

So also :-

Formerly Tibet was a secret (or hidden) country.

Instead of :--

(or
Formerly Tibet, etc.

(vi) Adjectives are also sometimes formed from nouns and postpositions, the latter being put in the genitive case, and the whole expression made to precede the noun that it qualifies. Ex. :-



 १ुगा
 जबतानाने 51



Some time ago a European soldier was living in Tibet.

Some of the many great ancient empires are still remembered.

The cat has broken the stone jug.

I live (or have a dwelling place) in an upper room of that house.

The adjectives to which attention is drawn in the foregoing illustra-
 Ancient; in the third

(vii) Some adjectives consist merely of a primitive repeated. Ex. :-


（viii）Others oonsist of two primitives，similar as regards their consonantal form，but with different vowels．Ex．：－

| Nは＇E゙ぶ | Soft，low． |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | Promiscuous，disorderly． |
|  | Steep，rugged． |
|  | Weak，feeble． |
|  | Curved，crooked． |

（ix）Or of a repeated dissyllable with a difference in the vowels． Ex．：－

（x）Or of two different dissyllables in juxtaposition．Ex．：－

$$
\text { ずエ・ม•耳 } \quad \text { Raving. }
$$

（xi）Or of two different monosyllables in juxtaposition．Ex．：－

| 94．${ }^{\text {a }}$ | Far，distant，remote． |
| :---: | :---: |
| 5407 ar | Measureless，immeasurable． |
| 5【ロTび | Immense． |

（xii）As to the formation of Abstract Nouns from adjectives，see $\S 29$, A． 6.
(xiii) English adjectives ending in able and ible are usually rendered
 Ch'od on'o', added to the root of the verb. Ex. :-











 wa, or Sु5 Rung. Ex.:-
 lated to terrify.
 drink.
 eat.
Sometimes, however, the supinal particle NN: 5; or $\mathbf{N O}^{\circ}$, attached to the verbal root, is omitted, and the particle $\nabla^{\circ}$ after $\mathcal{S E}^{\circ}$ is also dropped. Ex. :-




ロ．रेち1

This sight is terrible．

That tea is undrinkable．

This food is uneatable．
（xv）Where a noun is qualified by two or more adjectives joined by the conjunction and，or or，the construction is as follows ：－


Good and bad（addled） eggs．

Three or tour men．
（xvi）Negative Adjectives corresponding to such as begin in English with Un，In，Il，Im，Ir，or Dis，or end in less，are not very much used，Tibetans preferring to use an affirmative adjective and to put the verb in the negative．Ex．：－

Instead of saying ：－

A Tibetan would prefer to say ：－
同言＂
He is not a religious man．
However，when such negative adjectives are employed，they are formed with the aid of the Colloquial negative expressions केे，天下，and
 Ex．：－





(xvii) Sometimes, in the Colloquial, the Active Participles $\widetilde{\mathcal{W}} \mathcal{F}^{2}$
 which is, or are, who is, or are, are used adjectivally. Ex. :-


(xviii) In Literary Tibetan adjectives are frequently formed by adding to a noun, or to its root, or to a whole phrase, one of the ex-

 adjectives which end in $f u l, y$, ous, eous, ious, ate, ent, ic, ish, ed, ly, ive, etc.

Ex．：－

| ज⿹丁口欠丁 | Intelligent，Sagacious． |
| :---: | :---: |
| कै5．${ }^{\text {F\％}}$ | Punctilious，moderate． |
| 585 उ\％ | Beneficial，useful． |
| 日ana उ\％ | Renowned，famous |
| ¢すすす。 | Costly，expensive． |
|  | Passionate，amorous． |
| इ®＂ | Rocky． |
|  | Blissful，joyous． |
|  | Talented，literate，accomplished． |
|  | Intelligent． |
| बेश | Wealthy，opulent． |
|  | Full of moisture． |
|  | Full of energy． |
|  | Sinful． |
|  | A perfectly accomplished．scholar． |
|  | Having a pretty face． |
|  | Having an ugly mouth． |

उず is also said to be sometimes used thus ：－

 correct．See，however，$\oint .31, V,(b)$ ．

Instead of constructing an adjective out of the root，the particle， and the affix $\delta 0^{\circ}$ ，resort is often had to the root alone plus the affix $5^{\circ} \mathrm{J}^{\prime}$ a，or Cha．Ex．：－



II.-Augmenting of adjectives.

This can be done in several ways:-
(a) By simply repeating the adjective, either in the shape of the primitive root, or of the root with the particle. Ex. :-

|  | Very crooked. |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | Very silly. |
|  | Very sour. |
|  | $V$ Very sweet. |
|  | Very dirty. |
|  | Very clean. |
|  | $V$ ery early in the morning. |
|  | Very late. |

(b) By repeating the adjective, in any of its forms, with N $5^{\circ}$ Yang, inserted between them. In the Colloquial w $5^{\circ}$ becomes R'ANG, after consonants other than $\boldsymbol{\nabla}^{\circ}, \boldsymbol{5}^{\circ}, \boldsymbol{7}^{\circ}$, and $\mathbb{N} \mid$ Ex.:--
'N5' also becomes RE' after vowels, both in the Literary language and in Colloquial. Ex.:-

|  | $V$ Very heary |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | Very light (Coll |

In the Literary language $\mathbb{W} 5^{\circ}$ becomes $\mathbb{D V}^{\circ}$ Kyang，after final consonants $\boldsymbol{\Pi}^{\circ}, \boldsymbol{F}^{\circ}, \boldsymbol{\Xi}^{\circ}$ ，and $\mathbb{N}^{\circ}$ Ex．：－

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { EnTg゙ixal Very true. }
\end{aligned}
$$

（c）By use of the affix ळे Cres signifying emphasis generally． Ex．：－

|  | Extremely sinful． |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | Exceedingly brilliant |
|  | Very precious． |

The above，however，is more Literary than Colloquial．In the Colloquial $\overline{\mathrm{\delta}} \overline{\mathrm{l}} \overline{\mathrm{j}}$ ，added to the root，is more common，but it is often used merely to form the adjective，and not so much to augment its force．Ex．：－

|  | Precious． |
| :---: | :---: |
| रॅ5．केす | Brilliant． |
|  | Intellectual |
|  | Sinful． |

（d）By inserting $5^{\circ} 5^{\circ}$ Very，immediately before the adjective，


|  | Tibetan is very difficult． |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | The weather just now is very hot． |

Certain other adverbs may be inserted in the same way when the sentence is a negative one．Ex．：－

Qโิ.

हेरीुण।

III.-The Comparative Degree.
(a) To express this Tibetans make use of the postpositions RNは ${ }^{\circ} \mathrm{L}$,
 $\mathbf{E P}^{\prime}, \mathbf{F}^{\circ}$, or $\mathbb{2}^{*}$ ) in Literature, signifying Than, or More than, but they so manipulate the sentence as to place first the object with which the subject is being compared, then the postposition, next the subject, then the adjective in its positive degree, and lastly the verb. Ex. :-



 इ.रे51
 ritualists. बोंशे 51
 than professors.
$A$ religious man is happier than a worldling.
This house is higher than that one. Literally, Than that house this high is.

Tibet is colder than Sikhim.
(b) When there is no expressed object with which to compare the subject, an object may be supplied by means of R $R \underset{\sim}{\AA}$ This or $\bar{¡}$ Тнат. Ex. :-



（c）In the Colloquial the comparative degree of certain common adjectives has a special form．For instance，the comparative of

 is in CHEN is employed．Ex．：－

 미．शे
（d）The particle belonging to an adjective is sometimes vulgarly conjugated，i．e．transmuted into 护，句，or 产，according to the rule with reference to the last letter of the root．It is better，however， to avoid this．Ex．：－

be rendered 太KẼariñ


 rendered ふे• बो＇रे 5 ।

But not where $\bar{W} 5 \mathbb{T}$ ，etc．，has the sense of To have．Ex．：－

This man has wiser friende than that one．


## IV．－The Superiative Draree．

（a）To express this a universal comparison is resorted to，the subject being placed，at option，either before or after the expression used for the universel comparison．This latter may take numerous forms such as ：－

| あ5＇8నన్ |  |
| :---: | :---: |
|  |  |
| －150．arayk | Than all． |
|  |  |
| Tुず며N（Literary） |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  | From among all． |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |
| － | From among all． |
|  |  |
|  |  |

 or：－



 ふ．




This is the swiftest horse．

This stone is the most valuable of all well secured things．

Gold is the most precious of all metals（meltable things）．

（b）Another equally common method of expressing the superlative degree is to affix $\widetilde{q^{2}}{ }^{\prime}$ Shot to the root of the adjective． The order in which the sentence is constructed does not much matter，and even the use of NAN＂（in Literature NAT，당，or （EN＇）is optional．Ex．：－




If the speaker likes he may insert ₹ें The，after व्َरें，thus：－


 viated into ईデई



This horse is the fleetest．
Gold is the dearest of metals．
 into Rस्ता
(c) Yet another expression used to indicate the superlative idea is
 Literary word, and only rarely comes into the Colloquial. It may be either prefixed or affixed to the word that it qualifies, and when prefixed should be put in the genitive case. Ex. :-

 The chief mother: the goddess Dölma.


The best of the best.
In Literary Tibetan the substantive is put in the genitive case when सरेळां is affixed. Ex.:-


 Being.

The sublimest, most excellent.

The best or greatest of men.

 sometimes affixed, but neither it nor the substantive is put in the genitive case.' Ex. :-

|  |
| :---: |
|  |  |
|  |
|  |
|  |
|  |
|  |
|  |
|  |

The Chief Protector.
Anything excellent of its kind; also an abbreviation of दīk

The highest joy, rapture, bliss.
The noblest, sublimest.
The most excellent taste, delicious.
The wisest, most learned.
The very utmost attention.
The Chief of Beings, Buddha.
Thou best of men:

저र్का" is also used thus in Literary Tibetan :-

|  | Nobles and commonalty. |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | The great and the vulgar. |
|  | Great and small. |
|  | The very excellent or superior. |

## V.-Other Methods of Comparison.

The Tibetan rendering of English phrases constructed with As...ss, may be illustrated thus :-

 of that as possible.

## 

or:-


or :-
ᄃ•ค


 Literary जैद $\mathrm{G} \boldsymbol{\pi} \mid$
 अवसेगेमीकणा।
 एवभीพ
 or 25 示) लेव






Will you come as far as to yonder house?

This road goes about as far as to that house.

As high as that tree-trunk is (may be) this one also is.

As far as $I$ know, that is so: Literary, If it be according to the knowledge $I$ possess, it is just like that.
As soon as he rose I fired.

My book is as good as yours: Literally, My book is equally good-bad with yours.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { § 31.-The Pronoun. } \\
& \text { I -Personal Pronouns. }
\end{aligned}
$$

(a) I .
$\left.\begin{array}{l}5^{\cdot} \\ 5^{\cdot} 5^{\cdot}\end{array}\right\}$ Commonest forms in Colloquial.

7507 Expressive of humility．Chiefly used in Teang． Like Persian Bandeh．

 in reference to himself，but only in a comic way．

The following are Book－terms ：－

| －597 |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| 저구 |  |
|  | Expressive of humility |
| 754．ㅈ․․ <br>  <br> ज55तांके |  |



囘（maso．）This one，This person，This individual．用茳 $\quad$（fem．）$\} \begin{aligned} & \text { Used by the spea } \\ & \text { himself or herself．}\end{aligned}$
Г＾रिण I I myself，I alone．
ज5al｜

The following are Colloquially used by the Kyrong－pas，or Nipal Frontier Tibetans：－

ズざ「 We ourselves
（b）Tноб．




35．Used in official correspondence．




（c）He，or She．
$\overline{\mathrm{A}}$
$\overline{\mathrm{A}} \times \mathrm{F}^{-}$$\quad\{$ Common Colloquial forms．


$\left.\begin{array}{l}\overline{\mathrm{AA}} \cdot \\ \tilde{\mathrm{A}} \cdot \mathrm{CE} \cdot\end{array}\right\}$ Polite forms，Literary and Colloquial．
F⿵冂䒑


Other forms for She :-



(d) It.

There is no speoial term for this pronoun. It is often not rendered at all. Ex.:-



If used at all it is generally rendered by $\overline{\mathcal{F}}$, or $\bar{〔} \mathbf{x ®}^{\circ}$ Ex.:-



Usually Pronouns are not repeated in ordinary conversation after the first reference.
(e) Reflexives.
[5: Self, One's self, is the commonest expression, both in the Colloquial and in Book-language. Other Book-terms with the same


> II.-Deolension of Personal Pronouns.

This follows the same rules as apply in the case of Substantives. Ex.:-

Singular．
$\left.\begin{array}{l}\text { Nom．} \\ \text { Voc．} \\ \text { Aoc．}\end{array}\right\} E^{\cdot} \quad I$.
Gen．Б币̆ Of me．
Agent．LEN＇Byme．
Dat．［＇av To me．
Loc．E＇Gं Onme．
Per．
Mod． FF5．Against me．$^{-}$

Abl．［م오 Than me．




Dat．E•5® To me．

Plural．
ᄃ゙E゙ We．

［．BKN．By us．
ᄃ－Ж゙마 Tous．
Г．க゙ず Onus



に・あ゙すスr Fromus．
「ッロ・あ゙ We．


5．5п－க゙ar To us．

And so forth．
$\left.\begin{array}{l}\text { Nom．} \\ \text { Voc．} \\ \text { Acc．}\end{array}\right\} \quad \sqrt{55} \quad$ Thou．
Gen．馬気 Of thee，Thy．





And so forth．
$\mathrm{Or}:-$

Agent $\sqrt{55} \cdot \bar{x}$ N By thee．





से कै They．

ベ む゙ฝิ Of them，Their．


And so forth．
同官 $H e$ ，is declined like $5^{\circ} \times 5^{\circ} I$ ．
के She，is declined like नि $\mathrm{F} e$ ．
 चโํ This humble one，has for genitive बें，and for Agentive anal All those ending in $\mathbb{F}^{\circ}, \mathbb{\Xi}^{\circ}, \mathbb{J}^{\circ}, \bar{\sigma}^{\circ}$ ，and $⿷^{\circ}$ are declined like $5^{\prime} I$.

Those ending in $5^{\circ}$ are declined like $\overline{\text { ² }}$ Thou，save as regards the forms in $\overline{\text { a }}$

N．B．－Plural Nouns do not take the plural sign ${ }^{\circ}$ ．if from the context it is clear that plurality is intended［See $\oint 29 \mathrm{~B}, 2$（e）］，but plural Pronouns always take the sign，except when they are qualified by Numeral Adjectives．

Example ：－－
■®®ิ．We four．
「゚エ「민 We five．
III．The Refleitive Pronoun．
The following are examples of 上＇Self，One＇s self，used $^{\prime \prime}$ reflexively ：－






 or लेबंすवा।

気に1

If I know myself spiritually I shall see God．

If I see God spiritually I shall know myself／．

Man，know thyself．

The murderer has killed himself．
Did you keep the money for your－ self？

The idea originated from myself．
The dog pulled the bone towards itself．




（ii）The following are Literary ：－



He that speaketh of（from）him－ self，seeketh his own glory（John vii．18）．



I am not come of myself（John vii．28）．

Or better：－

－ฝすす！

I can of mine own self do nothing （John V．30）．
Or better ：－

I can，etc．
Ar gavin l

Or better ：－


गेंसे 1

What sayest thou of thyself（John i．22）．

Or better ：－
इड
What sayest，etc．

Askest thou this of thyself？（John xviii．34）．
Or better ：－

Askest thou this，etc．
5．




Whosoever shall exalt himself．shall be humbled；and whosoever shall humble himself shall be exalted （Matt．xxiii．12）。

## IV.-Compounds in XE' Rang. $^{\circ}$

(a) $55^{\circ}$ frequently forms the first part of a compound. Ex. :-
20.5)

โ5:सेक|स|
[5.रे!



स5:नी


सरิ̊


Or better :-
தुस太





Self ; One's self.

One's own soul.
Each; each respectively ; Hon. for you.

Each has hold of his oun leadingstring (D).

Each at his own door.

Spontaneous ; of itself.

Spontaneously.
Self-sprung.

By ignorance one's future was of its oun self destroyed.

Love seeketh not its oun (N.T.). Bringeth not about its own ends.

Love, etc.
I shall go to the house of my own accord.

Let us (the two of $u s$ ) go hence together.

One's own perception, intelligence, and happiness, three things (D).

You will take your own life (D).
(b) E5. also often forms the second part of a compound. Ex.:-


An unmarried man．

A spinster ；a woman by herself．
The very same，exactly，quite so．

It is just so ；it is precisely 80.

Quite early in the morning．

With negative－Not much，Not many．

By the mere（just by）meeting with $m e$ ．

A man all by himself ；just a man．

## V．－Possessive Pronouns．

1．－Ordinary Personal Pronouns．
（a）Possessive Pronouns are formed by putting the Personal Pro－ nouns in the Genitive case．They may either precede or follow the noun or object in respect of which possession is predicated．Ex．：－

##  <br> That is my thunder．

Or：－


Or：－

（b）In some works it is stated that the Possessive case may also be formed by affixing $\overline{0} \sigma^{\circ}$ to the shorter forms of the Personal Pronouns．

this be so, it must be a very obscure Literary usage. If an 0 -pa heard or saw the expression [- $\mathbf{J}^{5}$, it would probably raise in his mind the idea of egoism, selfishness, etc., and not that of the Possessive case as
 I the chief, i.e., possessed of pride, i.e., proud.

 ably means The Lama with, or possessed of, the prayer-wheel.

## 2.-Reflexive Possessive Pronouns.

These are merely the Reflexive Pronouns put in the Genitive case. They then signify One's, One's own, My own, Thy own, Thine own, His own, Her own, Its own, Our own, Your own, Their own, according to the pronoun, either expressed or implied, to which, in the same sentence, they respectively refer back.

Colloquial Examples:-

 win
 जे $\overline{\text { FIF or Literary }}$ जे $\sigma$ वसा


Or:-



 মンそ1

I shall ride my own horse.
We shall have to cook our own food.

Will you bring your own servant?

You must all bring your own knives, forks and spoons.

Each of you must bring his own knife, fork and spoon.

He did not realize his own good luck.
They cannot tell their own names.

 भुगा।




They have all cleared out of their own village.

Every house has its own park (compound).

My own mother educated me.

## 

In honorific form :-



He was the architect of his own good fortune.

## অरे 1

My own mother, eto.



He succeeded because of his oun diligence.
距
The following are Literary:-





He himself bearing our sins in his own body upon the tree ( 1 Peter ii. 24).

He who speaks of himself seeks his own glory (John vii. 18).
 his own subjects received him not （John i．11）．
anc：



Love seeketh not her own（1 Cor． xiii．5）．

You will take your own life（D）．
If one have no son of his own（D）．

VI．－Demonstrative Pronouns．
These may also be oalled Distinguishing Adjeotives．The com－ monest are R₹ं this，and ₹ें that，as to which see § 27.

The following are also common ：－

₹．x5• That very，That same．



โ甶里 thus ；so ；just that．

Also the following：－

| स閙 | That over there，Yonder（far off）． |
| :---: | :---: |
| 5 －बो | That just there（nearer）． |
| W鳥 | That up there． |
| 丈『মীं | That down there． |

These latter may be used just as they stand，or they may be put in the genitive case．Whiohever method is adopted，they precede the noun that they distinguish，and they may be used with or without $₹$ ．

Also the following: -

Examples:-

१ईंस్తण पेव
ईंस్ర犬थे


 ᄃ

 बRर्नोंगे।

ब ब ミ)



Or:-



Who is this?
Who is that?
This is my brother, or sister.
That is my master.
That same gentleman will employ you.
Please give me what you can of that: literally, what you can from that, just that please give.

This road goes as far as to that house: literally, this road to that house, about just that, goes.

What is the road like to the pass?
Very steep and crooked, just like that.

That won't do at all: literally, like that will not come at all.

## That is so.

What is the name of that hill away yonder?

The name of that big valley down there is Do-mo (Chambi).

## 25ुगा

 before?
The Literary equivalents for most of the above are :-


## Eramples：－



 Cyrene，coming from the country （Luke xxiii．26）．




And behold，a man named Joseph， who was a councillor，a good man and a righteous，of Arima－ thea，a city of the Jews（Luke xxiii．50）．

Such as this am I（D）．
Vil．－The Rectprocal Pronoun．

Examples：－

河に1
 5

सॅँ कौन


The ladies looked। at one another mirthfully．

They have scrutinized each other＇s garments．

The Lamas received ceremonial scarfs from one another．

 ミ51

They have gone in company with one another．


## भुगा

 9
सू


They are conversing with each other．

Ye also ought to wash one another＇s feet（John xiii．14）．

Some of his disciples said one to another．

VIII．－Interrogative Pronouns．
In the Colloquial these are ：－

|  | plural form | N＇N゙「 | Who？ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | ， | बत｜ | What ？ |
| 听5 | ， | 415 |  |
| बाॅべ | ＂ |  | Which ？ |
|  |  |  |  |

All the above are declinable like nouns．
The Literary equivalents are ：－


In simple questions the Interrogative Pronoun is usually placed immediately before the verb．Ex．：－

Rร์5 저눈










Who is present?
Who are these Lamas?
What Lamas were there?
What is your name?
What is that box made of (by) ?
What are these loads ?
What horses were there?
Who sent this book?
Which of these books do you want?

If, however, the Interrogative is in the genitive case, it may come either before the verb or before its noun. Ex. :-


Whose house is that?

When, too, the sentence is more complex, the pronoun, though it precedes, need not immediately precede the verb. Ex. :-







With what is the Kingdom of God to be compared? (Mark iv. 30).

When the sentence contains an Interrogative Pronoun the Interrogative particle is not usually added to the verb. However, there is no harm in adding it. Ex. :--

 or

What are you building？
Who is going to build that house？ What is that abbot＇s name？
Here may also be mentioned ajöँन What measure？It is often used as an adverb，signifying How much？but it may also be regarded as an Interrogative Pronoun signifying Wнат？Ex．：－

 This is really the adverb how，but it is often used as an Interrogative Pronoun in the sense now given．Ex．：－



离 1

What sort of spolt（wild animals， game）is there in that big valley down there？

What is the road like from Lhasa to Ta－shi－lhüm－po（Shi－ga－tse）？


 best to act now？

What sort of Being is the so－called Buddha？
N．B．－今．is more correct，but 佥 is also used interrogatively．
IX．－Relative and Correlative Pronouns．

> A.-Relative Pronouns.

In the Colloquial there is no pronoun corresponding to our Relative Pronoun Wно，the force and effect of which are expressed by turning
what we call the relative clause in the sentence into a kind of adjectival or noun phrase. This is done by adding to the root of the verb the affix ${ }^{1 / 4}{ }^{\circ}$, which, it will be remembered, may take the Article, Definite or Indefinite. Ex. :-


Or:-


Or:-
 १ुगा। sheep.

He has seen the man who kills the

He who killed the man (i.e., the man-killer, or murderer) has run away.


駞1




 햄제․

I have seen the man who killed the wolf, ie., the wolf-killer, or wolfkilling man.

I know the brother of the man who killed the wolf.

The man who killed the wolf has given me its skin.

I went moth the man who killed the wolf.

NT


All the villagers ran to the man who killed the wolf.


(ㄷ) ₹ेरा

बิगास


Q

 Q






The abbot gave the man who killed the wolf a rupee.

A man who came with the Sha-pe is staying in that house.

That man is the servaul of an official who came with the Sha-pé.

What is the name of the man who signed the Treaty?

The aitendants who came with the Sha-pé bouallt many quaint things in Calcutta.

Did you converse with the Amban who came from China?

The above are all in the Active Voice, but a difficulty occurs when there is nothing in the context to show whether the Active or the Passive Voice is meant. In the following examples, for instance, either voice may be implied :-
दस से



I have seen the man who killed, i.e., the murderer, or killingman; or
1 have seen the man who was killed.

In such cases the general drift of the conversation is the sole guide ' what the meaning really is. In fact, the last three examples are
susceptible of a third rendering，namely，The man who was killed by me has been seen；and，if this is not the meaning intended by the speaker，the Personal Pronoun［ズ should be inserted immediately before the verb．Thus ：－


The difficulty as regards Voice is，however，removable by avoiding the construction in $\$ \mathbb{R}^{\circ}$ for the Passive Voice，and using instead the simple Participle as an adjective either preceding or following its noun． Ex．：－


Or the construction in sNA耳 may be retained and something in－ troduced to indicate by whom or by what the man was killed．Ex．：－



โ鄚1
5ম

 killed．

## साद̈ँ

 Fु丁厂゙1

The Relative Pronouns Trat and Which may refer either to Animates or to Inanimates．When Animates are concerned，the construction for the Active Voice should be in \＄145\％，as above rvemplified．Ex．：－




When Animates are concerned，the construction for the Passive Voice is also in इNमबं，when the Agent is indicated；and in a simple Participle used as an adjec tive，either preceding or following its noun， when the Agent is not indicated．Ex．：－




Fु丁口！


This construction may also be used when the agent is indicated. Ex.:-

When Inanimates are concerned the Participial construction should be adopted. This construction, like the one in $\bar{\alpha} / \overrightarrow{\operatorname{T}}{ }^{\prime}$, is also in itselt incapable of differentiating between the Active and the Passive Voice. Thus:-



This is the iron that broke (something) ; or, This is the iron that was broken.

The following, however, illustrate the Active Voice, as an object is mentioned, and the sense is therefore clear. Ex. :-
 stone, i.e., the stone-breaking iron.

Or:-



Or:-

$\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text { This is the stone that broke the } \\ \text { iron. }\end{array}\right.$

The following illustrate the Passive Voice:-








Here is the rock that was struck by the arrow.

I will give you the book that you read to me.
 Inanimates, may also be used for the construction of Relative clauses, the former being put in the Genitive case, and the latter also, if it precedes its noun, but in the Nominative case if it follows its noun.

Examples :-
 जोंरे 51




 used thus :-

否

Or:-
々


A man who is now in Lhasa will come.

The cave that is in the forest must be searched.

The cave that is in the forest must be searched. be searched.

Have you seen the Treaty that was signed at Lhasa?

## B.-Correlative Pronouns.

The English Personal Correlative Pronouns, the rendering of which into Tibetan has now to be considered, are -
$\left.\begin{array}{l}\text { I or We } \\ \text { Thó or You } \\ \text { He or They }\end{array}\right\}$ Who.
Whoso.

Whoever.
Whosoever.
The Impersonal Correlative Pronouns may refer either to Animates or to Inanimates, and are:-

What, or That which.
What so.
Whatever.
Whichever.

Whatsoever.
Whichsoever.
Anything that.
Nothing that.
1.-Personal Pronouns.

When the Pronoun is in the first or second person, singular or plural, one construction is to use the Pronoun itself, in its ordinary
 the Relative part of the sentence into a sort of Noun-phrase, with the

 मुषर्टॉफेका

 जेखा



I who am conversing with you (i.e., I. the converser with you) am your king.

We who salute you (i.e., we your saluters) are your subjects.

Sometimes, however, the sentence has to be wholly recast and a participial construction adopted instead. Ex.:-

 thy son being with us, thou) must be our king.
When the Pronoun is in the third person, the construction may
 Ex.:-


旸•1
















He who (or whoever, or anyone who) runs away is (or will be) a coward.

Nobody (or no-one) who comes will ever return: or, he who (or whoever, or anyone who) comes will never return.

Whosesoever sins ye remit they are remitted.

He who (or whoever, or anyone who) runs away will be shot.
Anybody who (or he who, or whoever) goes to sleep there will never wake up.

Whoever (or anyone who, or he who) drinks this water will be thirsty again.
He who (or whoever, or anyone who) comes must work.
Whoever (or he who, or whosoever or anyone who) works will be paid.

Whosoever hath, to him having been given, he shall have abundance; but whosoever hath not,





 충메뒤


 will carry this letter.
N.B.-It will be noticed that N్N' is usually separated from WE' Moreover, it is the $\mathrm{NV}^{\circ}$ and not the WF' which takes whatever casesigns are necessary, and the UF' $^{\circ}$ comes in at the end of the relative clause.

> 2.-Impersonal Pronouns.

In the case of What (in the sense of That which) which is really a Correlative Pronoun, the participial construction is adopted, and the
 Ex. :-


Or simply:-



Do you understand what you are reading?





 cost.



The other Impersonal Correlative Pronouns, which are more

 thing that, and, with a negative, Nothing that, may be illustrated thus:-

Or:-


Or:-

Or:-

रुणा



Whatever, or anything that, she does is good.
that, or whatever, is in your house.



Or:-

Whatsoever is in a man's heart will influence his whole life.

 सरेर।
 written．

3．－Literary Constructions．
（a）The following examples illustrate the Literary method of rendering relative clauses：－

 डेรそ！









พ




And why beholdest thou the mote that is in thy brother's eye, but considerest not the beam that is in thine own eye? (Matt. vii. 3).

The stone that the builders rejected the same was made the head of the corner (Matt. xxi. 42)
Render therefore unto Cesar the things that are Caesar's and unto God the things that are God's (Matt. xxii. 21).

And the glory which thou hast given me I have given also unto them (John xvii. 22).

The cup which my father hath given me, shall I not drink it ? (John xviii. 11).

 name, they testify of me (John x. 25).
 a bed (Luke v. 18).

$\square$ \}The calf that is to be killed.

 And Philip ran to him and said, understandest thou what thou readest? (Acts viii. 30). झิस्रो।
（b）The Literary Correlative Pronouns are ：－


VIF정
UL：We

Whoever，Whosoever，Anyone who，He wHO，etc．

E．or in certain cases

## AF

व1F＝థิण
वारंके
aF： 5 「

गГW以
§ิખ以下
§̀qe

Whatever，Whatsoever， Whichever，Anything that， That which，What，etc．

The following examples will serve to illustrate the Literary render－ Ing of the Correlative ：－


## रुप्यास

（Mark ix．40）．


 Lord，Lord，shall enter into the Kingdom of Heaven（Matt．vii． 21）．


 women there hath not arisen a greater than John the Baptist； yet he that is but little in the




 न

 रूँ几 बิण










 etc.
kingdom of heaven is greater than John (Matt. v. 11).

Resist not him that is evil (Matt. v. 38).

With what judgment ye judge, ye shall be judged (Matt. vii. 2).

And whosoever shall compel thee to go one mile, go with him twain (Matt. v. 41).

Give to him that asketh thee, and from him that would borrow of thee turn not thou away (Matt. จ. 42).

And he that daleth on this stone shall be broken to pieces, but on whomsoever it shall fall it will scatter him as dust (Matt. xxi. 44).

Whosoever shall seek to gain his life shall lose it, but whosoever shall lose his life shall preserve it (Luke xvii. 33).

Everyone that drinketh of this water shall thirst again, but whosoever drinketh of the water that I shall give him shall never thirst (John iv. 13).






 ミิみボ
















He that cometh from above is above all ：he that is of the earth is of the earth，and of the earth he speaketh（John iii．31）．

What he hath seen and heard，of that he beareth witness（John iii．32）．
God is spirit ：and they that woo－ ship him must worship in spirit and in truth（John iv．24）．

That which is born of the flesh is flesh；；and that which is born of spirit is spirit（John iii．6）．

Jesus said unto her，I that speak unto thee am the Christ（John iv．26）．

Whosesoever＇s sins ye remit they are remitted（John xx．23）．

Unto everyone that hath shall be given，and he shall have abun－ dance：but from him that hath not，even that which he hath shall be taken away（Matt．xxv．29）．
He that rejecteth me and receiveth not my sayings hath one that judgeth him（John xii．48）．
But he that troubleth you shall bear his judgment，whosoever he be （Gal．v．10）．

 him that sent him, the same is true (John vii. 18).

It is his teaching who sent me (John vii. 16).



He who built all things is God (Heb. iii. 4).

 which we have seen with our






soever things are honourable, whatsoever things are just, whatsoever things are pure, whatsoever things are lovely, whatsoever things are of good report; if there be any virtue and any praise, think on these things (Phil. iv. 8).
X. -Indefinite Pronouns or Pronominal Adjectives.

1. In the Colloquial the following are the most common :-

बानंबेषा Something ; a certain (thing).

저N' Anyone, Anybody, Whoever; or, with a negative, No one, Nobody, None.




All，Whole，Entire，Every，Complete，Full．

おだよ





$\left.\begin{array}{l}\text { £े．} \\ \text { रें．} \\ \text { त्रेंते }\end{array}\right\}$ Each，Every．

प्｜रेषा＂प्वर्वेण One another，Each other．
Friqx ${ }^{\circ}$ Some．
दोन
बाउेगात्ये Sole，Only，Mere．


55＇Self，One＇s self．
\＃す̂alu $5^{\circ}$ Even one，Either．With a negative，None，Neither． Rิ85 ．Such．

Examples：－

 came from Lhasa．
 village．
 ふすごさに・1



No favour will be accorded to anybody．

Anybody can do this work．
 प्रूपरुण।

Anything that this man does turns into gold．

Nothing that he begins is ever丈ำ 51 finished．

Out of the whole army not one ず⿹勹口 man（nobody）was saved．

 tea.
 wa'̃
 to-day?
5 あ1
 रेโ1
 उदरुणना

 at Gúm (Ghoom).



 Darjeeling.







云共1

Each man presented a complimen－ teary scarf to the lama．







 5 51 1 same？
 to be the same．
थेबएव़ुण

 the same as the meaning of that word？
 घよかさे5।

I want a few grapes．

5 र्मोसा


 times many Buddhas have appeared in this world of ours.

## 

 them.


 रे 51
 Wॅ।

 even one escaped

Examples of $5^{\circ}$ Self, One's self, will be found at $\$ 31$, iii, iv.
 found at $\S 31$, vii.
 お命! (pron. nyúng). language.
2. The following are the Literary equivalents of the above:-

§ंबิच $\quad$ Something, $A$ certain (thing.)

| －TMAN＇ |  |
| :---: | :---: |
|  |  |
| Rबारंबิन | Some，Several，A good many，A good deal． |
| 内人囚 |  |
|  |  |
| सु（9）\％ | Anyone，Anybody，Whoever；or，with negative， |
|  | No one，Nobody． |


| स゙พ゙\％ | Everyone，Either，Each；or，with negative，No on |
| :---: | :---: |
| 听でW5． | Neither． |


|  | Anything，Whatever，Everything，Either，Each；or with negative，Nothing，None，Neither． |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |


|  |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| गुण | All，The whole，Every，Entire，Complete，All． |
| あ゙「\％ |  |

RAR＇बेमा Mere，Sole，Only．
प190 Other．
ब199＂बेषा Another．

| ब／ठेषा＇घा | Each other，One another |
| :---: | :---: |


| 玉． |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| ₹ेखे | Each，Every． |
| 或交 |  |
| \＄ิबाठेष1ए | Various，Sundry，Divers． |
| \＄ิ¢5 $5^{\circ}$ |  |



 sides) of the river (Jaschke).

## § 32. Adverbs.

These are both primitive and derivative. Of Derivatives, some are formed from Pronouns, others from Nouns, and others from Adjectives or Participles. There are also Adverbs of Time, Place, and Manner, Interrogative, Negative, and (added to verbal roots) Relative adverbs.

Those derived from adjectives are formed either by putting the adjective in the terminative case, or by adding to the adjective the expression $5 \mathbb{N}^{\circ} \mathrm{g}^{\prime}{ }^{\circ}$ It is a common habit, however, in the Colloquial to use an adjective adverbially without changing its form.

Adverbs are always placed somewhere before the verb. Interrogative adverbs come immediately before the verb. Others may be inserted at any convenient place in the sentence, so long as the rule is observed that they precede the verb.

The following are some of the commonest adverbs and adverbial phrases used in the Colloquial :-

## Adverbs of Time.

| (1) ${ }^{\text {N }}$ |
| :---: |
| $9{ }^{\circ}$ |
| ब1F |
| 밎N |


(Added to verbal root) When, used relatively; While.
 present.
Hitherto, Up to now.
Then (at that time).



| ब｜ģatar | After，Subsequently，Afterwards，Next，Last，In future， |
| :---: | :---: |
| EEx゚ロ | （ At last，At length． |



|  |  |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | Anciently |


（17NE＇Lately，Recently．
शेचे Late．


মামे‘্স户মें Slowly，Gradually，Gently，Softly．



Eメエ゙zx＇Eventually，Later on，Indirectly．

Qर्में（Added to verbal root）Just，Just about，On the point of， Going to．
5•ㅁ．Some time ago．

ลิ．ิิํ $-Y$ Year before last．



ल⿵冂．（．․․ Yearly，Annually．

Nに「ずす Tomorrow．
देशิธ Today．


亏ิ．자쥬이 Someday．

> Adverbs of Place



Note. -In Lhasa $R \widehat{f}{ }^{-} \cdot$ Dir, Here, Hither, is loosely pronounced as if it were spelt R5SV Dit , ie. something like the English word They, as pronounced by a Eurasian, with a slight dental $d$ sound to the Th. Hence one sometimes sees the Colloquial form of Here, Hither, spelt 255;, which is not quite a correct form of the loose Lassa pronunciation. Similarly one sometimes sees the Colloquial form of $\overline{\xi^{\prime}}{ }^{\cdot}$ There spelt $55^{\circ}$ D' ${ }^{\prime}$.

Both R55' and ${55^{\circ}}^{\circ}$ are incorrect. For the former the student should always use RF. $\mathfrak{S}^{\circ}$, or $R \tilde{5} 5^{\circ}$, when writing; and, if he chooses to affect the Lhassa pronunciation when speaking, he should say


एबों Over there, Yonder.
फ'बें Up there.
अ'बें Down there.
W5 Upwards.
\$F- Downwards.

gy ${ }^{\circ}$ Downhill．

Rf鳥 Hence．

핶수 Before．
মだ「～は



『＂包可が Opposite，Over against．
கోళ゙నా Instead of．
푸우 Just by，Close by．
G列 Off．


耳5＇아＇Within，Inside，At home．


वर्येवक्ष To the left．

प｜NANA To the right．

ब｜제피싸 Everywhere．


＂ㅈ995：Elsewhere．
認5－Aside．
स゙ざエ・ Asunder，Apart．

Adverbs of Manner．
R前 or 25．（The first added to root and the second to infinitive of auxiliary verb）Probably，Likely，Perhaps．
$\left.\begin{array}{l}\text { पाR25 } \\ \text { पन } 25^{\circ}\end{array}\right\}$ How？
R§〇25（pronounced Din－da）
4रेगनचबิण
ذेखे
बेश
१ิस

$5^{\prime 4}$ 피둥
Thus，So．
$5^{\circ}$ 미．रे $5^{\circ}$ Quite so，Just so，Precisely，Exactly．

जन नें．（Used with negative．）Quite，Completely，Absolutely， Thoroughly．


बवरिमान्ये Simply，Merely，Only，Solely．
工Г．Simply，Merely，Just，Only．

૬멎 Almost，Nearly．


ズズgñan Severally．





यमझा미 Better．
य
W5：Even，Likewise．





［ATのば Orally．
55• Personally，Precisely，Exactly．




S5：ax．Especially，Particularly．


घबा＇नेन• Decidedly，Exceedingly．


をエ゙をざ Indirectly．

 Genuinely．


ম্｜＇মি•মা＇মे＂Gradually，Gently，Slowly，Softly．
₹－（Between a duplicated adjective or adverb，with $\hat{\varsigma}^{\text {¢ }}$ at end of sentence）Of course．

Adverbs of Quantity and Comparison．
－बन्க゙5ं How much？How many？

W5：Even，Likewise．
 the most part，Mostly．

శో후，or in Coll．శै About，Approximately．

あЕ＇बิ̄ス＇Most．

 to any root．


ণ＇적ㅁ Only，Entirely，All．
रेन नें Partly．




स5・ズス＇Too much，Too many．

$35^{\circ}$ Little．


Interrogative Adverbs．





|  |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| 4ิず『R5 | Perhaps，Probably． |
| ※ิ大ロス7 |  |



$\left.\begin{array}{l}\text { 历＇న్ర } \\ \text { 万মম }\end{array}\right\} \begin{gathered}\text { Rather，For the most part，Somewhat，Almost，} \\ \text { Nearly，with negative，Scarcely．}\end{gathered}$


ప్ప్ర－（Added to root of verb），Ever．With negative，Never
$\left.\begin{array}{l}\text { むें } \\ \text { ฌें }\end{array}\right\}$ Not．


太ेळ Abbreviation of स్सेす Is not，Are not．

As regards the Adverbs and Adverbial phrases used in the Literary language，it is hardly worth while giving a list of them，as the student can easily find them for himself in Jäschke＇s or Rai Sara Chandra Las＇s Dictionary，or in Coma de Körös＇s Grammar，where he will see how and to what extent they differ from the Colloquial expressions．

Examples of the use of Adverbs and Adverbial expressions in the Colloquial ：－－

 （or Ta－shī Lama）come from Ṭā－sîi－lhüm－po（or Zhyi－ga－tse）？
ᄃ．

When the minister＇s son got

 married there were great festivi－ ties．

When the meat is nearly boiled．





















Where are you living?
Whither is the monk going?
Whence comes he?

Why have you come here?
While the house was being built, it collapsed.

He died about dusk.
When he went home he ate his dinner.

When he was eating, he fell.
How long (how many hours) is it since he died? i.e. was alive.

Have you ever been to Lhasa?
 or พิन"피।
 $n y u ́ n g$.)



The hills are very far away.


5.55
 more yet.
 much to do in Lhasa.




## ड्वेंत्रह।

 or, Perhaps they will have, etc.

 Ñ.1

How old is that tree?

How old are you?





Anciently (of yore) the five prefixes were pronounced.

Now-a-days they are not pronounced.
I cannot find the book anywhere. रुणा।


## ใनुण

दิें, "ेना



Go away immediately.
 बो 2 万ुग
 भुगा


## R-7ा







 today．


 चiरFo
零川
 ₹ $₹ 1$

What pleasant weather／


What an excellent road！





 ざざち

 (or Coll. [EN) |


 then to the left, and then go straight on for a distance of about twelve paces.




 Darjeeling?
 from Darjeeling?

 रेऽरे।

## §33. Postrositions.

What we call Prepositions, such as Of, To, In, On, By, With, From, About, Concerning, etc., and certain Prepositional phrases like By reason of, For the sake of, With respect to, According to, Instearl of, etc., are rendered in Tibetan by Postrositions, some of which are simple, and others compound.

The Simple Postpositions consist of the primitive partioles which are used in the formation of the Cases. (See § 25.)

As regards the Nominative Case, no such particles are used. (See § 25, I.)

As regards the Vocative Case. (See § 25, II.)

As regards the Accusative Case，no particle is necessary，but if desired the Postposition क्र may be inserted．Ex．：－


Or：－


He loves the girl．
 Up to，To，Till，are used．

N．B．－The following verbs may be used either with the bare accusative or with that and the postposition 8 ｜


RO5゙『，$\square \cdot 95^{\circ}$ 『，To tell，To explain．

$9^{\circ}{ }^{\circ}$ ，To petition，To beg，To offer．
बे $5^{\circ}{ }^{\prime \prime}$ ，To fear，To be afraid of．
Rर्टो밒，To strike against．


 （see § 25，IV）．Ex．：－

त्वस





ఫे







The woman＇s name．
The danger of uncertainty．
The wisdom of the East．
The law of custom．
The height of that house．
The end of a chapter．
The handle of an axe．
The colour of a turquoise．

As regards the Dative Case，the particle used is $\mathbb{N}^{\prime}$（see § 25，V）．






The dragon is eating the moon．

I have read that book．

 さ̃だ1
 \％
兯々そう！

Joy will sometimes kill people．

## 


से
 घस

As regards the Locative Case the particles used are ：－
$\left.\begin{array}{l}\text { 内＇} \\ \dot{q}\end{array}\right\} \operatorname{In}, O_{n}, A t, B y$ ，etc．
－
$\left.\begin{array}{l}5 \\ 5 \\ \text { 5．} \\ \text { 5．} \\ \text { 玉．} \\ \text { 장 }\end{array}\right\}$ In，On，At，By，etc．
（See §25，vii．）
As regards the Periodal or Durational Case，the particles used are $\mathcal{q}^{\circ}$ and $\mathrm{a}^{\circ}$ At，In，During，etc．
（See § 25，viii．）
As regards the Modal Case，the particles used are：－－
耳跃 By，Through，By way of，Via．
55＇Against，With，＇e．g．，with verbs of meeting，fighting，payin； respect to，visiting，etc．
$\mathrm{N}^{*}$（Silent）With，Because，Since，etc．
Sis＇（Rather literary）By，Through，On account of，For，By reason of etc．
（See § $\mathbf{9 5}$ ，ix．）
As regards the Ablative Case，in the limited sense in which it is used in this Manual，the particles used are ：－

2Iav Than，Except，Save，But，But for，Besides，etc．

（See § 25，x．）
As regards the Terminative Case，which in this Manual includes certain aspects of what is usually called the Ablative Case，the particles used are ：－



Of the Compound Postpositions，most are used with the Geni－ tive Case．The following are a few of them ：－

文 9效
第和

On account of，By reason of，In consequence of， Through，By，Because of．


 โస్ని：Amidst，Among，In the middle of． For the purpose of，In order to．


सब"(2) In reply or answer to, In return for.


The following are used with the Accusative.

| 55.3550 |  |
| :---: | :---: |
|  |  |


With, i.e., Along with, Together with, In company with.


55家元 Near to．

タुणां Until，For（time），As far as，For（space）．


## Examples．




## 


 the famine．



 Rुुण।
ᄃरิ．
Do not walk before me．
 रे 51 Dalai Lama．

Let me write in reply to that letter．

Your servant may go with the coolies．

प्वী


## § 34. Conjunctions.

1. In Tibetan the use, as in English, of Conjunctions like A ml and But is generally avoided, and the sentence is reconstructed, so as to begin with a subordinate participial clause, of which clauses there is often a long string before the principal verb is reached.

Example:-


Here the sentence is turned into: That house not being mine, I cannot give it to you.

Not being, the negative form of the participle present of the verb To be, is rendered ฝेबच® ar The affirmative form Being, would be

2. But where the Disjunctive idea is sought to be expressed the form ${ }^{\prime}{ }^{\prime}{ }^{W} 5^{\prime}$ is used thus :-

 give it to you.

Here the sentence is turned into: Though that house is mine, (yer) I cannot give it to you.
3. It would be quite allowable, however, to avoid using the Conjunctions altogether, and simply say :-


4. Instead of OUNF $^{\circ}$, as above, W5' alone, or $\mathbb{T V}^{\circ}$ acoording to the final of the preceding word, or the gerundial particles $\mathfrak{F}^{\text { }}$ (after
 $F^{\circ}, \square^{\circ}$, $\mathbb{F}^{\circ}$ and all vowels) may be used. Thus:-

 not give it to you.
5. Another way of expressing the same idea is the following :-

 not mine, I cannotgive it to you.
6. As illustrative of similar formations in connection with verbs





## 






 set out.
7. The expression Either....or, is rendered by w.'〇, or by


Or：－
万ス
Or：－




 सेख

Or：－


 is more usual，by ${ }^{\circ}$ alone．Thus ：－
 Or simply ：－
－5
Ditto．
The second and third persons also take this 社 Thus：－



So with the verb To have：－－


And similarly for the other two persons．

With verbs other than $\overline{\mathrm{w}} \mathrm{F}^{\circ}$ and R5才" (To be, or To have), the conditional sign $\boldsymbol{q}^{\circ}$ is simply added to the verbal root, Present, or Perfect, for all persons. Thus :-



If I can, or could, give.
If thou canst, or couldst, give.
If he can, or could, give.
If I ask, or asked, him.
If thou askest, or askedst, him.
If he asks, or asked, him.

9. Expressions like Ago, and Since, in the sense of From the time that, are rendered thus :-

10. Our common conjunction $A n d$ is expressed by $55^{\circ}$ meaning
, used as an enclitio, but only the first two nouns in a series are
10. Our common conjunction $A n d$ is expressed by $5^{\circ}$ meaning
with, used as an enclitic, but only the first two nouns in a series are oonnected by it, however numerous the series may be. Thus :-
 nobody.


Between two Imperatives, especially in Literary Tibetan, And is rendered by $\mathrm{a}^{\circ}$. Thus :-

In Literary Tibetan, moreover, in addition to ${55^{\circ}}^{\circ}$ and $\Re^{\circ}$, And and But are rendered by $W 5^{\circ}$ and $\prod^{\circ} 5^{\circ}$, and by the gerundial partioles
 which And occurs frequently, and it is desired to vary the particle. Thus :--










 ᄃス


 착신

Eating flesh and drinking blood (Das).
Tall and well made. (D.)
Heat is hurtful (but) cold is benoficial. (D.)
As you are of high and noble birth. (D.)
If I have prophecy and know all mysteries and all knowledge, and if I have all faith, so as to remove mountains, but have not love, I am nothing. ( 1 Corinthians xiii. 2.)

Come ye out from among them, and be ye separate, saith the Lord. And touch no unclean thing; and I will receive you, and will be to you a Father, and ye shall be to me sons and daughters, saith the Almighty. (2 Corinthians vi. 17, 18.)
11. In the Colloquial WF $^{\circ}$ or, after final $\nabla^{\circ}, 5^{\circ}, \nabla^{\circ}$, or $\mathbb{N}^{\circ}, \mathbb{T V}^{\circ}$ may signify And, Either, Neither, or Nor, according to the context. At the beginning of sentences the following are common: रेंब However,
 gandar Then, In that case, Consequently

Examples :-
W上.




 Fiरो
 तो सेका


12. Whether is expressed by using the interrogative duplicative suffix. Thus:-
 \{5011
 ふे 51
 गें디
 ते $2 \int_{0} \prod_{1}$ know.
13. Or may be expressed either as explained in clause 7 of this $\oint$, or thus :-

14. As to the use of Conjunctions with Numerals, see § 26, II, Note 3.

> § 35. The Substantive Verb Wॅfer To be.

The primary meaning of this verb is To exist, To be present, but it is often used attributively, i.e., as a mere copula to connect subject and attribute, and also as an auxiliary to other verbs.

As a substantive verb and when used attributively it may be conjugated thus :-

## Present Indicative.

Affirmative.


There being no difference between the singular and plural constructions, only the singular will henceforth be given.
 also be used for phrases like There is, There was, There are, There were, etc. Thus :-
 थ 25 village.
 expresses knowledge derived from information. Thus :-



No, there is not.
 taints．

The future root $\mathcal{W}^{\circ} 5^{\circ}$ ，for all persons，is sometimes used for the present tense，when vagueness or indefiniteness is implied．Thus ：－
 that valley．

## 

 not now in use．

An elegant Literary form，not much used however，is：－
よ్దీズ
$45^{\circ}$

And the Respectful form is ：－
$\operatorname{ag} \pi \mathbb{N}^{\circ}$
ज ER
चgु｜N，or सER，or －ğankrivg
$I$ am．
Thou art． I am．

Thou art．

He is．

Negative of $\widetilde{W} \rightleftharpoons \square 1$

I am not there．
से
『অこうち！

Interrogative Form．





 बेद्या

लिंदे


Attributive.
Гพ以

 सरेश।

Colloquially, $\mathrm{W} 4 \boldsymbol{T}^{\prime 2}$ is sometimes pronounced $Y a^{\prime} \cdot p u$, instead of Ya' -po.

In some phrases, like the following, R5和 and not $\overline{\mathcal{W}} 5^{\circ}$ is used with the first person; probably because there is really no nominative "I," but the construction is " There is to me."

Moreover, the phrase is conjugated with $\overline{\text { If }}$, etc. Thus :-
 I am cold. एवर्बोरुणा।

I am ill.


I am hungry.
I am thirsty.

Imperfect Indicative.
This may be formed just like the Present Indicative, the context generally sufficing to show what the tense is. Thus :-

Affirmative.









Apart from contextual indications as above, this tense may also
 Thus :-

Affirmative.

"




Negative.


Thou wast not here．

He was not here．

Attributive．

ᄃपुपार्ये



1 was rich．
Thou wast rich．
He was rich．

## Interrogative．

 or सेन $\sqrt{1}$


をN，or 『）
 or $\begin{aligned} \\ \text { O }\end{aligned}$
And so forth．
Perfect and Pluperfect Indicative．
Same as the Imperfect Indicative．Thus ：－


And so forth，throughout all constructions．

## Futurm．

The Future Simple is expressed Colloquially by 次 $^{\circ}$ for all persons． Thus：－

Affirmative．


Attributive．
ᄃ＂ひमा



## 

 ロシージィ

N．B．－5．or $5^{2 / 2}$ in Literary Tibetan should not be used as a mere copula to connect subject and attribute，nor should it be used substantively，but only as an auxiliary to verbs．

|  | Negative（Col．）． |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | I shall not be here． |
|  | I shall not be good． |
| And so throu | erting में before Wّ1 |

Interrogative (Col.).

|  |  | Shall I be here？ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | Shall I be good？ |
|  |  | Shall I not be here？ |
|  |  | Shall I not be good？ |

And so throughout．Also with $\mathrm{TV}^{\circ}$ ，or $\mathrm{L}^{\circ}$ ．Thus ：－


Shall I be good？
The other tenses（which really represent the Conditional）are as follows：－


स

Literary．
KRF゙TM
And so for all persons．


or ₹ิヶ命

or 25 वान्यु।
ERFテオ




## Subjunctive．

Phrases like If I am，If I be，Should I be．．．．then．．．．I will or would be；or，If I were．．．．then．．．．I would be，or would have been，are

 Rๆुपां for all persons，and then using the future root $\overline{\mathcal{W}} 5^{\prime}$ ．Thus ：－

Attributive Present.

Or:-

Or

 सेथिए।
 Wैन ।


 used.

 comfortable.

रुष", or जुन
जै₹






## Substantively (Col.).

The construction is just the same as when used attributively.

Negative.
 Thus :-

If I am not, etc., I will not be comfortable.

The Literary attributive construction is :-

If I am rich I shall be happy.



## Potential.

Phrases expressive of ability to be present, or ability to be anything (egg. good), are rendered with the aid of $\boldsymbol{g}^{-1} \mathbb{V}^{\circ}$ To be able, or by that and other auxiliaries, added to the root of $\bar{W} 5 \mathscr{D}^{\circ}$ Thus :-

## Present.

 गेथेक।
 शेथेक





Past.


## Probability.

Phrases expressive of likelihood or probability of being present, or



## Present.





I may be here. Perhaps I shall be here. It is likely that I shall be here.

जो फेखन्वे।

 बोसेवर्ये।
N.B.-स्सेन
 but this is not quite clear.

## Past.







Similarly with 4 a|'a' Good, instead of $25 \cdot 5 \cdot$ Here.

## Negative.






## Literary.

This construction is in $\overline{\hat{N}^{\circ} V^{\circ}}$ To be possible, combined, sometimes with the Verbal Root, but usually with the Infinitive in the Terminative case. Thus :-




## सेवेने।






There is also another construction in $\sqrt{2} \mathbb{D}^{\circ} \boldsymbol{\theta}^{\circ}$ To calculate, reckon, used thus :-

It may be so : I reckon, or guess it is so.

## Hortative.

Phrases like Must, Ought, Should (in these senses), Need, Want, etc.,

 Thus:-

## Present.



Past.


気每



N.B.-If there is an adverb to show the tense, the Past may be constructed like the Present.

## Purposive.

Phrases like That....may or might be; In order that....may or might be; So that....may or might be; In order to be, etc., are expressed by means of the Infinitive put in the Genitive Case and
 Thus:--


So that he may (or might) be sate.
The Literary construction is to put $\overline{\omega 1} 5^{\circ} 5^{\prime}$ in the Terminative Case followed by $5^{\circ}$ or $5^{\circ} 9^{\prime}$ in the Genitive Case, and winding up with あ5. Thus:-

Or the construction may be in Ryrai put in the Genitive Case and followed by ${ }^{5}$ Thus:--

 xvii. 21).

## [mperative.


Regarded as a substantive verb, its Imperative would per-

 Begin to exist. Thus :-

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { Be here at midday. }
\end{aligned}
$$

Such an expression, however, would probably never be used in fact. A Tibetan would ordinarily say :-

Come here at midday.

If the idea of origination, or becoming, be implied, the proper

 or respectfully 쟈둘․ To make, To do, To act, might be brought into requisition. Thus:-


 of $5 \mathbb{N}^{\circ}$, but $5 \mathbb{N}^{\circ}$ seems more correct.)

Negative:-



Note that in prohibitions the Imperative takes the Present Ront of the verb.

When used attributively the Imperative of $\widetilde{W}^{\prime} \mathcal{F}^{\circ} \sqrt{\prime}^{\prime \prime}$ is, in the
 재55:지 just mentioned. Thus:-


Negatively :-



Another way, which, however, is rather Hortative than Imperative,


Imperative root，and what is said being only a statement of fact and not a command，the negative 内ें，instead of $^{\circ}$ ，is used．Thus ：－


Do not be afraid．Literally，Fear－ ing，or fear，is not necessary．
This also，however，may be expressed in the usual way．Thus：－

 fear．

The enclitic particles 部（after final 服， $5^{\circ}$ or $\nabla^{\circ}$ ，and after anything in the Colloquial），बิهा（after all vowels，or after final $\mathrm{F}^{\cdot}$ ，बं，
 tory orders and stern commands．Ordinarily they are omitted．Even then the order is softened in various ways，e．g．by using the polite expression रूपास＂ Thus：－

|  | Please be careful． |
| :---: | :---: |


When addressing equals or inferiors familiarly，the following constructions may be adopted ：－
 quick．
 Do be punctual．

A more Literary form would be ：－


## Precative．

 （the Perfect Root），Imperatives of the verb REना＂q＂To allow，added in Colloquial to the Root，or，in Literature，to the Terminative case of the Infinitive．

Thus:-


## Literary.



Or :-The root of the verb ${ }^{2} \mathcal{F}^{\circ} \sqrt{r}^{\circ}$ may be put in the terminative case, and the auxiliary verb ATNW和 used. Thus :-


Pray let me be first; I beg you to let me be first.

## Permissive.

This is formed with the aid of $\tilde{\delta} \overline{\mathrm{F}} \boldsymbol{y}$. To be allowed. Thus :-

 बैं


Negatively ：－

 here．
运に，

Interrogatively ：－



 से से Cal

Optative．
 To come．Thus：－

The construction is the same for all persons．
In Literary Tibetan ：－

And so for all persons．
Infinitive．
论 （e．g．，good）．


In Literary Tibetan the Infinitive is also $\tilde{\mathcal{N}}<\boldsymbol{F}^{2}$ ，but it is often seen in the terminative case，as सि5 चF Thus：－

 teacher．

Again ：－
 বホは， Literally，Who thinkest thou that thou art？That is，Who thinkest thou thyself to ве ？
Colloquially these would be：－
 $\Gamma$－
产 चสは＂

Sometimes the plain root is found in Literary Tibetan used in an Ininitive sense．Thus：－

 been，or that he was）in the com－ pany（Luke ii．44）．

Where mandatory Imperative verbs like Tell，or Order，govern（in English）an Infinitive，the proper way of rendering the phrase in Tibetan is to turn the Infinitive into an Imperative．Thus：－

内人1

## Partictples．

थै ${ }^{\circ}$ चl having only one root，the Present and Past Participles are the same and exactly like the Infinitive．Thus ：－

 to be．
 inanimates，the former meaning who is，or was，or which is or was，and the latter which is，or was．It is really used as a kind of adjective．

Examples ：－
 5気市
 is feet）．

Your knife is a blunt one．
The Past is similarly constructed．Thus：－

 honest．

The Future may be constructed like the Present．Thus ：－
与知 1

Or thus：－



Or：－



In Literary Tibetan the Present Participle is also $\overline{\mathcal{W}} 5 \cdot \sqrt{7}$ or other variant of the verb To be．

Examples：－
 बानुण
 more than this is of the evil one (Matt v. 37).

## १बुए।

दसणा रकाना





I am.... which is, and which was, and which is to come.

As the above examples show, the Past construction is similar, the context giving the tense.

The Literary Future for the Periphrastic Participle follows the lines of the Colloquial.

Other Literary Participial Expressions.

## Present.




พิ₹ค Being.



Past.




सें $\overline{9} \overline{9} \quad$ In or by having been; if, when. ..was, were.
W75.45 Having been ; as, since, when, after...was, were.

Other Colloquial Participial Expressions.

## Present.



सँ $\varlimsup^{\circ} 9^{\circ}$ In or by being ; if, when...is, are.

Past.


## Supine.

This is formed in Literature by putting the Infinitive in the Terminative case. Thus, $\widetilde{W} \mathcal{F}^{\circ} \mathbb{1 5}$ To be. Or it may be formed by putting the Root in the same case. Thus wָTTo be.

In Colloquial the supines are $\mathcal{W}^{\circ} 5^{\circ}[$, and $\bar{W} 5$

> Verbal Noun.

In Literary Tibetan $\overline{\mathcal{W}} 5 \mathbb{V}^{2} T o b e$, is often seen turned into a Gerund, or Verbal Noun, by the addition of the Definite Article ₹े, or बें, or sometimes both. Thus स्रूร The being.

Example :-
 Literally, The being here is good (Matt. xvii. 4).

## रुगा

The Colloquial Verbal Noun is simply the Infinitive with or without $\stackrel{\circ}{\circ}$

Example:-
褯ち1

§ 36. The Verb 'To Have.'

Like the Latin mifi est, or the Russian U menya yest, There is to me, this verb in Tibetan is merely an adaptation of the Substantive Verb $\overline{\mathcal{W}} \mathcal{F}^{-1}$ To be, with the subject put in the dative. But whereas, in Latin and Russian, this construction is only an alternative one, in Tibetan it is the only idiom used.

Examples:-


|  | $I$ have not a father. |
| :---: | :---: |



That country will not have a king.
And so throughout the conjugation.

## Periphrastic Participle.

EXAMPLES:-







The faith which thou hast.

The faith which thou wilt have.
He that hath.
He that hath not. $\left\{\begin{array}{c}\text { (Matt. xxv. } \\ 29 .)\end{array}\right.$
Even that which he hath (ib.).

## §37. खิवर्r To Be.

 a negative particle, direct negation, and also to connect any subject with its attribute. It cannot, however, like $\mathcal{W}^{2} \mathcal{F}^{\prime} \mathrm{y}^{\prime}$, be used to express presence, or existence, or the idea of possession. In other words, though



It may be conjugated thus:-

## Present Indicative.

Affirmative.
 I am good.

Very rarely జ్ఞ
Thou art good.


Or occasionally :-



Literary Tibetan. I am good. $\}$ Thou art good. He is good.

The plural being the same as the singular, it is omitted. Honorific construction in Literary Tibetan :-
(Not used).




## Colloquial Negative．




 Literary or Colloquial it is best to use ईे

Interrogative．

or 凶ิすच！


or £ेร『1
Or occasionally ：－

\}Is he good?

Litcrary．



N．B．－If and when，in the Colloquial，स्ष $\bar{\sigma}^{\circ}$ is used with the 2 nd person，it is generally when a question is being asked．It is hardly ever used in the Colloquial with the 3rd person，though it is not abso－ lutely wrong so to use it．

## Imperfect Indicative．

Same as Present Indicative，the context generally showing what that tense is．Thus ：－


 $95 \mathrm{~F} \mid$

Yesterday I was good．
，，thou wast good．
，．he was good．

In Literary Tibetan the construction is similar，but of course the Literary forms of the verb must be used．

Another method is similarly to rely on the context for the tense，
 according to the rule of the Present Indicative．Thus ：－




घ゙ざ₹，or
thou wast good．
 for all persons，preceded by స్N̄，or other indication of tense ；and ロミロロ would replace wal

Perfect and Pluperfect Indicative．
Same as Imperfect．Thus ：－

I have，or had，been good．
And so forth，throughout all constructions．

## Future．

Same as in $\tilde{W} 5^{\prime} \sqrt{ }$ ，ie．expressed by $\bar{W} \Gamma^{\prime}$ for all persons． The Literary construction is：－
5.


[.....



I shall be a shepherd.
Thou wilt be a shepherd.
He will be a shepherd.
I shall have been
Thou will have been. ...........
He will have been.

When బ్ఠ'శ" is used as an auxiliary to other verbs, we shall find that in the Colloquial there is another Future construction, namely,
 persons.

## Subjunctive or Conditional.

 they occur, and, in the negative forms, মेळ or इण for झे; in the first part of the sentence, but keeping the second part as it stands there. Thus :-

> Present.

## Г

If I be rich, I shall be happy.
Past.

If I were rich, or had been rich, I would be or would have been happy.
The Literary construction is:-

If I am rich I shall be happy.



## Potential

 is annexed. Thus:-

Present.


Past.


Perfect.

I could have been good.
Or:-


Likelihood.



Hortative.


Present.



Past.

## Purposive.




In order that I maybe, or might be, sate.
 in the genitive case and followed by

Example:-
₹.5स.

Imperative.

## Literary.



Colloquially.
As stated under ${ }^{2} / 5 \cdot \sqrt{1}$
Pregative.



Let me be a lama

## Permissive





Optative.



Literary.

Would I were rich.

Infinitive.
ய్జ్రా ${ }^{\circ}$ To be. In Literary Tibetan it is the same.





To have been.
To be about to be (Coll.).
$\{$ To be about to be (Lit.).
Examples:-

In Literary Tibetan:-
 केषा|
 चरें
 , वेस

Now, consider (see) how great this man was (to be).

Ditto.

This man, if he were a prophet, would have perceived who and what manner of woman this is which toucheth him, that she is (to be) a sinner. (Luke vii. 39.)




Or: in Literary Tibetan :-


I know that his commandment is (to be) life eternal.

Participles.
Present:


Periphrastic.
Both in Colloquial and Literary Tibetan, Present and Past Tenses, this is:-

Examples.-


5.F.



 (Rom. xi. 13.)
 were not my people: and her my beloved which was not beloved. (Rom. ix. 25.)

## A remnant (that which is a remnant) shall be saved. (Rom. ix. 27.)

Take that which is thine own. (Matt. xxv. 25.)
Now, I, Paul, myself, who in your presence am lowly among you, but being absent am of good courage toward you. (2 Cor. x. 1.)



The Future Periphrastic Participle both in Colloquial and Literary Tibetan, follows the lines of $\bar{W}\{\bar{y} 1$

## Other Participial Expressions．

Literary．
रूपके
जूबबิे


थं
फิดस
जेन
जे
रेबने
जैबकस
जेवसस
ヘิఇा＂はस
ติवयारए
से $ब क$

## Colloquial．

सेवぢस พิबचत？

सेवक
सेवचाईं
जेबल
$\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text { At the time of being；When，while．．．am，is，} \\ \text { are．}\end{array}\right.$
Present．
$\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text { Being；as，since，when，after，while } \ldots a m, \text { is，} \\ \text { are．}\end{array}\right.$ \} At the time of being; when, while ...am, is, are. In or by being；If，when ．．．am，is，are． Being．

Though，since，because ．．am，is，are．
Of or for being．

Past．
\}Having been ; As, since, when, after ...was, were.
Because，since，when ．．．was，were；Having been．

As，when ．．was，were．
In or by being；If，when ．．was，were．

Being；because，since，as，when ．．：am，is，are．
In or by being ；If，when ．．am，is，are．
Of or for being．
Being．

Past．

Ж్毋すスヘ
※ेनचरें
ल్毋゙リスম
फेन ${ }^{\circ} 5$
※ँの 9

Because，since，when，after，as ．．was，were： having been．
Having been ；as，since，when，after ．．was，were． Of or for having been．

As，since，when，after ．．．was，were．
As，when ．．．was，were．
In or by having been；If，when ．．．was，were．
Supine．



Verbal Noun．
Either प्रेஏ『『 Being，To be，or the Infinitive of the verb，which in itself includes the idea of To be．It may either be used alone，or，in the


Examples：－






N．B．－It must always be remembered that $\mathbb{X Y} \bar{\square} \sqrt{\circ}$ is never used sub－ stantively，but always in connection with some noun，adjective，or verb，into which its forms have to be moulded．

## § 38. The Verb.

1.--Preliminary. The Tibetan Verb denotes only a sort of indefinite happening or state, and this not of itself, but rather by means of certain auxiliaries, including the verb To be, which alone really constitutes the verb in a Tibetan sentence. Thus:-


Literally, this is: By the sower, as regards the seed, a sowing is.
In fact the so-called Verb is rather a kind of Noun, modified in its significations by the verb To be, according to the mood or tense of the latter. It possesses in itself no means whereby to distinguish between the active and passive voices; the singular and plural numbers are alike in construction ; and, except as regards the auxiliary To be, all its forms can be used with any of the persons indiscriminately.

The changes or inflections undergone by the Tibetan Verb are effected in three ways:-

1. By structural alterations in the Root;
2. By making use of Auxiliary Verbs;
3. By resorting to divers monosyllabic Particles for the formation of Infinitives, Participles, Supines, etc.
II.-Roots.

These in Literary Tibetan are four:-1. Present; 2. Perfect : 3. Future ; and 4. Imperative.

Thus:-
Sิ $5^{\circ}$ To do, To make, To act.
Present Root: $\overline{5} 5^{\circ}$ Do, Does, Doing.
Perfect Root: $5^{-1}$ Have or has done.
Future Root: $5^{\circ}$ Will do.


However，every Tibetan Verb does not possess all four roots． Some only possess three．Thus ：－

<br>Present Root：रह́वं Drop，Drops，Dropping．<br>Perfect Root：메케제，or $\exists \bar{A} \mathbb{N}^{\circ}$ Have or has dropped．<br>Future Root：미큥 Will drop．

Some possess only two roots．Thus ：－
R前可 To go，To walk．
Present and Future Root：R R Goes，Will go．
Perfect and Imperative Root：X̄E• Have or has gone，Go．

Many possess only one root for all tenses．Thus：－

－ 4 ㅋㅋํ．To remember．
島ヷ『 To be able．


Where，in Literary Tibetan，a verb possesses a special root for each or any of the different tenses，and for the Imperative Mood，that special root must be used for those tenses and that mood，save that when the Future construction is in R⿹勹巳寸 Root is retained instead of the Future Root．Where there is no special Future root or Imperative root，the Present root is used for the Future and Imperative．It is impossible，of course，to learn the root－forms of all the verbs，but there is no reason why those of the commoner verbs should not be memorized to some extent．

As regards the Colloquial，though it is quite allowable to use the
roots that are assigned to particular moods and tenses for those moods and tenses，yet it is said that as a matter of fact，at least in vulgar Colloquial，this is seldom or never done，and the root generally used is the Perfect root．When，however，the Present root of a
 inherent $R^{\circ}$（e．g．，$\nabla \mathbb{J}^{\circ} \square^{\circ}$ To bear，or bring forth），or in（e．g．，g＇ To request，ask），or in（e．g．，र्ळ゙च• To live，teed，nourish），it is said that that Present root is generally used for the Present Indicative，the Future Indicative in बो＂फेक，or बौंशे $5^{\circ}$ ，the Present Farticiple，Active Present Participle，Present Infinitive，Supine and Verbal Noun．If，in these verbs，the Future is formed with 产に instead of बी सेक etc．，the Perfect root（or perhaps more correctly the Future Root）must be used．Thus ：－

โस तुन्नीजेव।

But：－



I shall see．
Thou wilt bear．

I shall see．

Root）
In Literary Tihetan ：－


The above idea that the Perfect Root should be used in the Collo－ quial probably arises from the fact that it sometimes has the same sound
 Perfect Root $\mathbf{\square} 55^{\circ}$ and the Future Root $\boldsymbol{4} / 55^{\circ}$ sound nearly alike．

Of course it must be remembered that the Colloquial，as such， pays no regard to spelling，but only to its own phonetics．Hence，if one
writes Tibetan, one should spell properly. Therefore, also, if one attempts to write Colloquial, as such, it must-always look wrong, as regards spelling.

In Compound Honorific verbs the first retains the Present root


Example:-


With all other verbs the vulgar Colloquial, it is said, usually adopts the Perfect root, if any, or at least the sound of it, as above explained, for all moods and tenses. Thus, for $\overline{5 / 5 \sim}$ To send, let go, dismiss, the roots are :-

Present Root: चनॉ. Send, Sends, Sending.
Perfect Root: $\quad \boldsymbol{7 5} 5^{\circ} \quad$ Have or has sent.
Future Root: $\quad$ a $55^{\circ}$ Will send.

In Literary Tibetan the Present Indicative is :-




$I$ send. $\}$ I am sonding.

But in the vulgar Colloquial it is :- ENAㄱ55', or $455^{\circ} I$ send,


In Literary Tibetan the Future Indicative is expressible in several ways with different roots. Thus:-


But in Colloquial it is :-


There seems also to be an emphatic form in which $\mathcal{W}^{*}$ is affixed to the Future root, and is followed by $\overline{\mathrm{Y}} \mathrm{F}^{\circ}$ for all persons. Thus :-


I shall send; I am to send, i.e., by me a sending is to be.
So, in Literary Tibetan the Present Participle is बन $\overline{\mathrm{F}} \mathrm{F} \cdot \hat{5}$. Sending;

 For sending, etc. ; but in Colloquial the Present Participle is $\boxed{65} 5^{\circ} 9^{\circ} 55^{\circ}$,



 Colloquial would be 755 . रुषा|
III.-Auxiliary Verbs.


 To be finished，completed，terminated；Ra্drai Tobemade ready，finished，

 57．To be necessary，or expedient or expressive of the idea of obligation



 probable，likely，etc．，，etc．

IV．－Adxiliary Particles．
（1）—市，जें，产，ひैं，दें annexed to the Verbal Root according to rule，with reference to the final letter of the root（see § $25, \mathrm{iv}$ ）．Used
 phrastical Present Tense．For example，in the Colloquial，which loosely uses the sound of the Perfect Root－

エボロ5だ｜I send．
But：－

Sometimes，in the vulgar Colloquial，they are annexed to the roots
 Thus：－


It is better，however，to use the adjective in full，and not to employ the construction in बें，बों etc．

These Particles are sometimes used at the end of a sentence in the sense of a finite verb, and more particularly in the lst Person Future.

Examples:-


 Gerunds, and signify By (doing something), or Because, Since, etc., but more usually antithetically as But, Though.

Examples:-
 Though I called him he has gone.

 tamasha.

It may even be annexed to the root of the verb To be. Thus:-


Though it is a good story, or It is a good story but . . .
 lows -:

 in him.

When annexed to the root of an adjective it includes the verb To be. Thus:-

 was, or is) of fine stature.
 Literary forms, and denote the Participle Present.

Examples:-

 form a periphrastical Present Tense, just as ai, etc., do in the Colloquial.

Examples:-


Lo, I come (am coming). (Heb. x. 7.)

He is singing.
When connecting the root with 55. Together with, they are often used gerundially.

Examples:-





In, when, or while sending.
In, etc., singing.
In, etc., doing.
In, etc., going.
Thus :-
 stand up.

In the Colloquial this may be rendered :-



(4) $-\overline{5}$ after final $\boldsymbol{F}^{-}$

产 ${ }^{\circ}$ after final $\boldsymbol{q}^{\circ}, 5^{\circ}, \square^{\circ}, \mathbb{J}^{\circ}$ and all vowels.

These are a sort of Continuative Particles or Suspensives，and may be annexed to all Present and Perfect roots，but according to rule，with reference to the final letter of the root．Annexed to Present roots they form a Present Participle，or Gerund，and，annexed to Perfect roots，a Past Participle，or Gerund．Thus，they may be rendered．．．． ing，or ．．．ing been，or ．．．．ing．．．．ed，or As，when，after，etc．They are Literary rather than Colloquial，though not altogether absent from the latter，and are largely met with in those subordinate clauses a longer or shorter string of which generally goes to the construction of a Tibetan sentence．

Examples：－

 （formerly having been）at en－ mity with each other．（Luke （xxiii．12．）


（Matt．v．1．）

 ciples went（having gone）down to the sea，etc．（John vi．16．）




This Suspensive，which is Literary rather than Colloquial，is annexed to the．Root，and expresses in one or other of its forms the Present Participle，but sometimes also the Past Participle．It is also sometimes used instead of the conjunction $A n d$ ．Lastly，it often ex－ presses a causal relationship，It is generally met with at the end of minor interpolations within subordinate clauses．

Examples：－
 ざNに1

बิ•।



 १ิ०।
(6)-F|K` and $\operatorname{FN} \mid$

These are merely the particles $\mathbb{\Sigma}^{\circ}$ and $\square^{\circ}$ of the Infinitive, or simple Participle, put in the Instrumental or Modal case. Practically they are equivalent to $\overline{\mathfrak{F}}, \overline{\mathrm{F}}$, and 작 and the next noted Suspensive $\boldsymbol{\sigma}^{-}$They are often used as a variant of these, when the latter have already occurred in the same sentence. This is merely a matter of taste, to avoid repetition. Primarily they mean Because, Since, Seeing that, etc., but they also carry the sense of When, and of the Participle, both Present and Past. Both Literary and Colloquial Tibetan make use of them :-

## Examples:-


वิव

रे下 से


When I looked; i.e., I having looked.
As, since, because it is very diffcult; or It being very difficult.
Since it is $I$, or It being $I$, or $1 t$ is I, be not afraid. (Matt. xiv. 27.)

Then Simon's mother-in-law having been seized by a fever-illness and having lain down. (Mark i. 30.)

 see. (John ix. 41).
(7)-92N". This Suspensive, both in Literary and Colloquial Tibetan, is annexed to the Perfect root, and expresses a Past signification. Other-
 It means After, or When, and conveys also the idea of the Past Participle.

> Examples:-

 ther who is? Thus having said. (Matt. xii. 48, and elsewhere).


 5気刘



I have been (having been) young.
I was formerly (having formerly been) in Darjeeling.

Annexed thus to the Verbal Root, and followed by ū5 or R\{4, it indicates either the Pluperfect (active), or the Perfect (passive). Thus:-



 I had been asked.

(8)—쇠N․ This particle has (perhaps) sometimes a Present but more often a Past signification, and is always found attached to the simple Participle in $\boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{\circ}$ or $\boldsymbol{\Xi}^{\circ}$. It means From; or When ....ed;
or Being . . . ed : or Having been: or $A s$ or While, followed by a Past tense ; or $A s$ or While, followed by a Present Participle (in which case the root of the verb is often repeated, the particle $\underset{\sim}{ } \boldsymbol{F}^{\circ}$ or coming next, and then the $\left.\alpha \mathbb{N}^{\circ}\right)$; or When on the point of ; When about to: When going to: Being about to, or on the point of, when used


## Examples:-





 associated with a householder of that country, after having settled. (Luke $x v .15$ ).


欮:



 지지|

रिरेश
 Q

And while he yet spake. (Matt. xxvi. 47).

When they were going (As they went). (Matt. xxviii. ll).

And the disciples as they went. (Mark ii. 23).
There shall two men be in the field, i.e. while being. (Matt. xxiv. 40).

And they stoned Stephen: or As or while they stoned, or were stoning Stephen. (Acts vii. 59).

After that, two of his disciples, having set out on a journey, as they were going to a country. (Mark xvi. 12).




And as they went on their way. (Acts viii. 36).
And while they, thus conversing, questioned each other. (Acts xxiv. 15 ).

And Saul, yet breathing out threatenings and slaughter against the Lord's disciples. (Acts ix. 1).

And when Paul was now about to open his mouth. (Acts xviii. 14).

And should have been killed, i.e., being about to be, or on the point of being killed. (ActB xxiii. 27).
(9)- 5 . This is expressive of condition, hypothesis, contingency and even doubt, and may be rendered by $I f$, When, On, Since, As, Should, Had, Were, etc. It is generally added to the Root, but sometimes (though not often) to the Infinitive, and is much used at the end of verbal phrases both in the Colloquial and in the written language. Sometimes the phrase which it concludes is introduced by the expression $\overline{\operatorname{pim}} \mathrm{F}^{\prime}$ or মামি太্যী;, but the subjunctive idea is in no way affected even if this expression be omitted.

Examples of its use with the Root are given under $\overline{\mathcal{N}} \boldsymbol{f}^{\circ}$ (§35), and 《్యాప| (§37).
$\bar{\sigma}^{\circ}$ is also used in Literary Tibetan, adversatively, to express Though, Although. Thus:-

Although he was formerly a transgressor. (Das.)

It also expresses the idea of Reason for, or Causality. Thus:-
 Since this existed, that arose. (Das.)

Used with $\sigma^{\circ}$ it expresses When, or If and when. Thus:-



Since fire existed, smoke arose. (Das.)
(On) seeing me the thief fled.
(10)-W. Annexed to the Participle, this Suspensive may mean To,
At, In; With respect, regard, or reference to ; Concerning ; Relative to;
(10)-- Annexed to the Participle, this Suspensive may mean To,
At, In ; With respect, regard, or reference to ; Concerning ; Relative to; In consequence of.

## Examples:-




If and when, or when, I go. (Das.)
If and when, or when the time comes, i.e., it comes doun to the time. (Das.)

|  | To rejoice in killing. (Jäschke.) |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | To shrink from, or be afraid of (i.e., with respect to) sinning. (Das.) |

Annexed to the Root, it may be used for the Present Participle in a minor phrase, much like 今ิन and its variants. Thus :-

 and meaning $A s$.

Examples:-




As it does not occur in the world. (Jäschke.)

Annexed to the Root, it is used adversatively for Though, Although.
Example:-

Annexed to the Repeated Root, it expresses While, Whilst.
Example:-

 down what I say.

When annexed to adjectives, $\sim^{\circ}$ includes the idea of the verb To be, being indeed an abbreviation of सิदాణా Being, and seems to have the force of $A n d$, or But, according to circumstances.

Examples:-





Hair and beard being yellow and long. (Das.)
Being ugly as to his body and of small stature and (or but) having a fine voice. (Das.)

Being ugly and short. (Jäschke.)
Being of good figure, nice to look at, and pretty.

In double Imperative or Precative expressions, \&r has the force of the Present Participle, or of And, and is annexed to the root of the first verb.

## Examples:-




से


Come and see (coming, see).

Now, rise and come hither (rising, come hither).

Go and look (going, look).

In sentences like the following，where our Supine means In order to， or For the purpose of， $\mathbb{W}^{\circ}$ ，annexed to the verbal Root，is used Supinally both in Literary Tibetan and in the Colloquial．

Examples：－

 सेट।
）而
When connecting a verbal root with the auxiliary verb భ్बాళ，or रे $5^{-2}$ ，this particle forms，in modern Literary Tibetan，a Future tense which is practically a kind of periphrastic conjugation of 䨌（as a Future Participle，About to ．．．．）with the auxiliary verb．

Examples：－

It is also used in older Literary Tibetan to express necessity， obligation，expediency．

Examples：－
 Am I to come？Must I come？
 He ought not to beat the horse．

In the Colloquial 画，annexed to the verbal Root，is extensively used for the Infinitive．

Examples：－


I do not wish to go there．
 home？


What have you to say?
There is nothing at all to say.
Be pleased to rise.
Is there any sport (game) to be got here?

I do not wish to be there.

In the Colloquial this particle, with or without the RF.ं, is also extensively used, annexed to the Verbal Root, to express what correspond to our Verbal Nouns in ing, i.e. the Latin Gerund.

Examples :-


## 

 Literary language: The reading of the Literary language, etc. さे 51
 time for selling (of selling) shares.


ordinary language; There is no meaning of many people having to learn this, etc.


Both in Literary Tibetan and in the Colloquial this enclitic, used after the Infinitive or Participle in $\Sigma^{\circ}$ or $\exists^{\circ}$, may be rendered $A s$, When (carrying a Past signification), and it also has the force of the Past Participle.

Examples:-

And the Word became (having become) flesh. (John i. 14).

स'
ra










(a woman of Samaria having come) to draw water. (John iv. 7).

In the beginning was the Word (the Word having been). (John i. 1).
Ye shall see the heavens opened, and, etc. (The heavens having opened, ye shall see, etc.). (John i. 51).

Then, in the calculator's computations the year omens having been harmonious.

When he has arrived (He having arrived) at the house of the family.
When about a year had elapsed.
When at last the wedding was over.
As the big bell was tolled.

In Literary Tibetan, especially in Western Tibet, ${55^{\circ}}^{\circ}$ is often used gerundially with the Present Participle in बोन, तोरें, etc., and means In, When, While, etc.

Example:-

 $u p$.

In Literary Tibetan, and especially of late in the Colloquial, it is used as a familiar form of the Imperative, and implies advice, exhortation and entreaty.

Examples:





```
    Ff)
    5. \(\int^{\text {after vowels. }}\)
    NT V after Nr \(^{\circ}\)
    \(\sim^{\circ}\) after anything.
```

These particles, as Verbal Auxiliaries, are extensively used in Literary Tibetan to express the Infinitive Future and the Supine. They are seldom, if at all, used in the Colloquial, save by those who affect Literary forms.

## Examples :-


 to eat of the tree of life. (Rev. ii. 7).

 throne (Rev. iii. 21).



Who is worthy to open (opening) the book and to Loose the seals thereof? (Rev. v. 2).


 tormented (but to be tormentED) five months. (Rev. ix. 5).
 fear. (1 Cor. xvi. 10).



my left hand is not mine to give. (Mark x. 40).



 ने

The last of these particles, namely ar', is not much used in this $^{\text {r }}$ connection in Literary Tibetan. It may, however, be so used instead of any of the others.

Example:-


 Literary Tibetan, the force of the Present Participle, and, with EV added, may be used as an adjective; while |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| $5^{\circ} 5^{\circ}$ |
| , serves as a Gerund, | meaning As, While, or Whilst, and also Though, and Because, or Since, according to circumstances.

Examples:-

I. am going. (Elegant form).





 RgCスMTN| (while entering the monastery) they chanted hymns. he drank.
（16）－びよ゙．
This is a Colloquial Suspensive．Added to the verbal Root，it means As，Since，Because，and implies either Present or Past．

## Examples：－

 horse，do．
 स्बेव1 read it
（17）－ $\int_{6} \mathrm{~N}^{\circ}$ and $\operatorname{fin}^{\mathrm{Na}}$｜
These also are much used Colloquially．Annexed to the verbal Root $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{-N^{\prime}}$ acts as a Gerund，meaning $A s$ ，When，While，At the time of， etc．

Examples：－
 aratargayikl

5arar has the same meaning，but is annexed to the simple Infinitive，or Participial form of the verb，put into the genitive case．

Examples：－


 さे 51
 V．－Moods and Tenses．
A.-Infinitive Mood.

The Infinitive，both in Literature and in the Colloquial，is the simple form of the verb as given in dictionaries，i．e．the Root，with $\mathbb{F}^{\circ}$ ．or $\boldsymbol{q}^{\circ}$
annexed, according to the rule regarding the final letter of the root. It is the same as the Participial form, and also as the form of the verb regarded as a substantive. Thus $\overline{5} 5^{\circ} \mathrm{F}$ may mean To do, or Doing, or $A$, or the, doing.

Each root can be regarded as the basis of a special Infinitive. Thus:-


In Tibetan the latter of two related English verbs takes precedence of the other, and may be put in the Infinitive, or in the Genitive form of the Infinitive. Thus:-


At the same time the Colloquial construction by which Gin is added $_{5}$ to the verbal Root has largely taken the place of the Infinitive. Thus:-




In conversation, however, it is quite allowable and common to omit the $\sqrt[\square]{ }$ or $\boldsymbol{\sigma}^{*}$ of the verb that is governed by the other. Thus:-


This is particularly the case where the governing verb is givivi
 necessary; must, ought, and the like.

## Examples:-



## 鸟 1




Let us go away.

I allow you to depart.


In order to live it is necessary to eat.
You must go to school.

You ought not to beat that child.
Where the governing verb is one of Knowing, Saying, Hearing, Thinking, or the like, the governed verb, in sentences like the following, is put in the Infinitive, or else the verbal Root, with 和 annexed, is used.

Examples:-

I did not know that you were here (you to be here).
 रेश्वेश। （you to be going）．
 ※ิ์ （Buddha to have been）at first a king．
 5स्ञ
 सेす1
［स（
 お芽可到 been entrusted to me（the work to have been entrusted to me）．

The same construction is also used in connection with phrases like It were better that，It is evident that．

 were bound on his neck and he were（he to be）cast into the sea． （Mark ix．42）．



In phrases containing That，So that，In order that，With the object of，To the end that，For the purpose of，the verb is put in the genitive



Examples：－



$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\text { In order that I may, or might, be } \\
\text { here. }
\end{array}\right.
$$

लัक下





 or | 595 |
| :---: |
| 10 |

Where, in English, a mandatory Imperative governs a verb in the Infinitive, e.g. Order him to come, Tell him not to go, the Tibetan construction puts the governed verb also in the Imperative, not the Infinitive, mood.

Examples:-


 REf!

Whenever it is possible to turn a verb into a Verbal Noun, or what is called in Latin a Gerund, it should be done.

Examples:-





B. -The Supine.

The genius of the Tibetan language is so different from that of other languages, both Eastern and Western, ancient or modern, that to
speak of Supines，Gerunds，and the like，in connection with it，is at least to strain the limits of analogy，if not to indulge in the illegitimate． But，so long as this is remembered，the Supine of Literary Tibetan may be said to be susceptible of several constructions．First，it may appear in the shape of the Infinitive put in the Terminative case with $\boldsymbol{F}^{\circ}$

## Examples：－


 let him receive（hear）it．（Matt．

I ask to be forgiven this wrong． （ 2 Cor．xii．13）．

 （Rev．iv．11）．

 둗 ठो （bestow love on）strangers．（Heb． xiii．2）．

Secondly，it may take the form of the Verbal Root，with


Examples：－


そこNस゙
หीโ

## － $15{ }^{\circ}$

That he should lay his hands on their heads and pray．（Matt． xix．13）．



This bottle is（likely）to crack．


Thirdly, it may appear as the Infinitive, put in the genitive case


Examples:-

 the ends of the Earth to hear the wisdom of Solomon. (Luke xi. 31).

He came forth conquering and to conquer. (Rev. vi. 2).
The Colloquial has no Infinitive in the Terminative case with $\mathbf{x}^{-}$ That is only found in Literary Tibetan. In the Colloquial, therefore, the Supine never appears in that form. It expresses itself either through the Infinitive alonc, or through the Infinitive put in the genitive case and followed by $\sim$ 下" (and generally means "In order to," or "For the purpose of "), or through the particles (when necessity or obligation is implied), or $\mathrm{A}^{\prime}$ (object or purpose) annexed to Verbal Roots.

Examples:-


 to see the trial.
 वेगा
 चुणे।


> C.--The Verbal Noun.

What this is may be seen in the sentence, For to me to live is Christ, and to die is gain. Here, the Infinitives, To live, and To die, may be turned into Nouns, The living, and The dying.

In Literary Tibetan the Verbal Noun appears either in the guise of the Infinitive（which，as already explained，is formally the same an the Noun and the Participle）or in the guise of the Infinitive followed by the Definite Article $\widehat{\S}_{\dot{\gamma}}$ ．Thus，in Literary Tibetan，either of the following contsructions is right ：－



Or：－



For to me to live is Christ，and to die is gain．（Philip．i．21）．

So also：－
－ （Matt．xix．10）．


It is hard for a rich man to enter into the kingdom of heaven． （Matt．xix．23）．
 पनान्रॉ्रफेक।

Colloquially the Verbal Noun may be expressed either through the Infinitive followed by $\Omega \hat{\mathcal{Y}}$ ，or $\hat{\mathcal{F}}$ ，or through the Verbal Root followed by 这，or $W$ ，with or without $\overline{\text { ₹ }}$

Examples：－
 ₹े 51
 ひबाबा：スेร।
 makes no difference．

Examples:-


In fact, the Verbal Noun, just like any other noun, is subject to declension.

Examples:-


rn regards hearing, slow as regards speaking, slow as regards being angry). (James i. 19).

The Verbal Noun may be formed out of any of the Infinitives, Present, Past, or Future.
D.-Participles.

The Present Participle of every verb is, in its simplest form, the




 the Past Participle in its simplest form is the Perfect Root with 5 annexed, as alkgisig spoken, or with $\boldsymbol{\sigma}^{\circ}$ annexed; as Pulled out; or, where there is no Perfect Root, then the Present Root, with $\sqrt{ }$ or $\boldsymbol{\sigma}$, as the case may be, added to the completive auxiliary


From either of these Participles may be formed the Active Participle, by taking the Present or Perfect Root and adding to it the


Agent, or Instrument. The phrase thus formed can be used either as an adjective or as noun.

Examples:-



These, it is obvious, can also be rendered periphrastically, thus: He who kills, or killed, the sheep.

But the simple Participles, Present or Past, can also themselves be used periphrastically, by regarding either as an adjective and putting it in the genitive case if it precedes its noun, or in the nominative if it follows its noun.

Examples:-
 doing work) itself bears witness that the Father hath sent me (to have sent me). (John v. 36).

 me having sent Father) hath also borne witness of me. (John V . 37).

The above illustrate the adjective phrase preceding its noun. The following are examples of the Participial Adjective following its noun :-


In the Colloquial the construction of these Active Participles and Periphrastic Participial phrases is in 잼 for animates, human or otherwise, and in $\boldsymbol{V}^{\circ}$ or for inanimates, in both cases annexed to the root. Here, too, the expression or phrase may be treated either as a noun or as an adjective, and in the latter case it may precede or follow its noun.

Examples:-

## 

Or:-


Or:-


Or:-
ฝे

Or:-


Or:-


Or:-

In the case of verbs with no Future root, the Literary Future Active Participle is formed thus :-





In the Colloquial 馬 is used thus:-


As regards the rendering of the Passive Voice, see $\S 31$, ix. A. Reiative Pronouns.

The Future Participle, in Literary 'Tibetan, is expressed by the Present Participle put in the terminative case with $\mathrm{F}^{\circ}$, and followed by $5^{\nabla^{\circ}}$, signifying About to...., or To be....ed. In fact, formally, it is the same as the Present Infinitive of the Passive Verb.

Also by the Future Root with $5^{\circ}$ annexed, signifying For. . .ing; or by the Present or Future Root with 気 annexed.

Examples:-

 slaughter (To be slaughtered sheep). (Rom. viii. 36).
 aforetime were written for our learning. (Rom. xv. 4).




 written for our learning.

Many Participial expressions with a Present or Past signification are also formed by annexing to the bare Verbal Root, or to the Participle, the Auxiliary Verbal Particles already dealt with at an earlier stage of this paragraph. The following are all annexed to the Root:-
 tic form.

रें, Ћें, §ें ...ing ....erd. Present or Past according to root.


| CRN and $0^{\circ}$ | ...ing. ...ed. As, when, since. | Really Nr $^{-}$annexed to Participle. Usually Past. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 9ar | . . .ed. | Past. |
| 内- | ...ing. ...ed. |  variants. |
| ¢ and $\square$ ¢ิ¢ | . . . .ing. | Present. |
| ช5' | ...ing. ...ed. | Present or Past. |
| $5^{20}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text {. . ing. ...ed. } \\ & \text { While when. } \end{aligned}$ | Present or Past. |

The following are annexed to the Participle:-

| RUS | ...ing. .. ed. $\}$ Usually Past, but sometimes As, since, etc. $\}$ Present. |
| :---: | :---: |
| $55^{\circ}$ | $\begin{gathered} \ldots . . e d .\} \text { Past. } \\ \text { As, since, etc. } \end{gathered}$ |
| $55^{518}$ | ...ing. ..ed. $\}$ Used with genitive. Present or While, when. $\}$ Past. |
| هr | $\left.\begin{array}{r}\text { _...ing. } \\ \text { As, since. }\end{array}\right\}$ Usually Present. |
|  | E.-Gerunds. |

This name is another instance of the attempt that has somewhat unfortunately been made to present the mysteries of Tibetan in the guise of western nomenclature. What has already been dealt with under the heading Verbal Noun was really the Gerund in the Nominative case (equivalent to the Present Infinitive); and the constructions usually called Gerunds in Tibetan Grammars are really a kind of Participial expressions; none other, in fact, than those which we have just been considering.

Here reference may be made to a form of the Gerund in the genitive case which is common in Literary and Colloquial Tibetan, though it might equally well have apppeared under the heading Verbal Noun.

Examples:-

Brethren, these things ought not so to be (of the being so, there is not propriety). (James iii. 10).


heed to the things that were heard （of the taking pains by us as regards the heard－things there is the more propriety or necessity）． （Heb．ii．1）．
₹

（N．B．－This last is Colloquial．）
F．－Indicative．
（a）Present．
In Literary Tibetan this is formed with the Present Root in several ways，some of which are as follows：－

1．－By the simple Root for all persons，singular and plural ；as द̈वर्यों
 etc．；$\llcorner$ aaa

2．－At the end of sentences，by the simple Root as above，with the addition of $\widetilde{\sim}$ in the case of verbs like $\widetilde{\tilde{y}}$ ，the root of which ends in a vowel，and，in the case of other verbs，reduplicating the final
 Earalinir I send，and so for all persons，singular and plural．

In fact，throughout all conjugations the singular and plural are alike．

Where，however，the Root ends in $\mathcal{R}^{\circ}$ ，another $R^{\circ}$ with $\sim$ super－ posed is not added，but the $\sim$ is put over the first $R^{\circ}$ ．Thus $=5 \widetilde{R^{\circ}}$ $I$ drive．

3．－By putting the Infinitive into the Terminative case with $\mathbf{F}^{\prime}$ and adding the auxiliary 敦 or F if

 I do know，etc．An intensive form．
4. - A rather obsolete form is to add the $\overline{51} 5^{\circ}$ or $55^{\circ} 5^{\circ}$ direct to

5.-Periphrastically, by the simple Participle Present, combined
 of their elegant or honorific forms. But this is rather a doubtful form and in any case old.

Examples:-




6.-Periphrastically, by connecting the root with the appropriate conjugation of $\widetilde{W} \mathcal{F}^{\circ} \mathrm{E}$ To be, the link being one of the auxiliary
 final letter of the root, as :-





I am sending.
Thou art starting.

I am going.
7.-Periphrastically, by connecting the root with the appropriate elegant or honorific form of $\overline{\mathcal{W} 5} \mathbb{E}$ or $95 \sqrt{4 \pi}$, the link being the


Examples:-



I am sending.
Thou art sending.

And :-



As regards the Colloquial, when the Present Root of a verb ends in an inherent $\mathcal{F}$, or $\mathbb{R}^{\circ}$, or in or ${ }^{2}$, that Present Root is generally used for the Present Indicative. With all other verbs the Colloquial, according to Mr. Bell, usually adopts the Perfect Root, if any; or, as seems more likely, at least the sound of it. When writing the Colloquial it is advisable, or allowable, to employ the proper root.

The formation of the tense then proceeds thus:-
1.-The Root (Present or Perfect) for all persons, as [NN국 I see or
 or ERratic I send.
2. -Periphrastically. The Root (Present or Perfect) combined with
 being बें, जें, तें, or फें, or शें (though जों generally takes the place of these last two), agreeably to the final letter of the root.

Examples:-




> (b)-IMPER'fect.

This expresses the idea of the Periphrastic Past: Was, wast, were . . . . . ing.

In Literary Tibetan it may be rendered by the Perfect root (if any), with $\sqrt{ }^{\prime}$ or $\square^{\prime}$ annexed, combined with the Indicative Present


 death. (Acts viii. 1.)

Or it may take the form of the Perfect Root (if any) with one of the auxiliary Verbal Particles or Suspensives annexed, and combined


Examples:-
 स्रॉनलेश gether and were praying. (Acts xii. 12.)

Probably however, it would generally be found put participially. Thus:-

 the disciples was multiplying (the number, etc. multiplying) (Acts vi. 1.)

This almost endlessly Suspensive Construction, as the ordinary feature of a Tibetan sentence, which really only contains an absolute statement at the end, must never be forgotten.

In the Colloquial the Imperfect Indicative has no special form. It simply employs the Present Tense construction, leaving the context
 Long ago), to indicate the Past idea, if it exists.

Examples:-


## पेका

 सरेश।

(c)-Perfect.

This, which expresses the idea Have, hast or has . . . . ed, is rendered, in both Literary and Colloquial Tibetan, by the Perfect Root combined with the appropriate elements of $\bar{W} \sigma \cdot \sqrt{ }$ To be, which, it will be remembered, are not quite the same in the two modes. Thus, in Literary Tibetan the construction is as follows:-

I have spoken.

or, occasionally, जेवन्वे।
Thou hast spoken.

This tense is not infrequently used for our Past Indefinite. Thus:-

To this end came I forth. (Mark i. 39.)

In Colloquial the construction is as follows :-


 अुण1

This also is often used for our Past Indefinite. Thus :-


Another Colloquial rendering of the Perfect Tense is to add
 Perfect Root, if any : the construction being the same for all persons.

Thus：－

I have brought the box．


He has received the letter．


The suit has been decided．
Certain verbs usually take $\sqrt[5]{5}^{5}$ in preference to $\overline{A_{V} 5^{\circ}}$ ，and others तथम．in preference to 矿 In this connection practice will make





 To hear．${\underset{F}{5}}^{\circ}$ is generally seen with the lst person，and where this is so the other persons usually take $\left\{\int_{0}\right.$ 可｜

（d）Past Indeflnite．

In Literary Tibetan，at the end of sentences，this consists of the plain Perfect Root for all persons，with the final letter generally re－ duplicaten．

Examples：－
 ロッデロー・

He came forth conquering and to conquer．（Rev．vi．2．）：

When the verb possesses no Perfect Root the Present Root is used.

## Examples :-


 Hrom the sun rising. (Rev. vii. 2.)

But in phrases like the following, introductory to what a speaker has said, the Perfect Participle is always used :-

Jesus said. (John xx. 17.)


亏力. (John xx. 25.)

Thomas answered and said. (John xx .28. )

But note the following construction where the verb, being at the end of the sentence, is not put participially, but in the form of the plain Perfect Root again :-


Sometimes one sees :-

Thus it has been said. (1 Cor. x. 7.)
Note also the following construction, where givia for she could does not occur at the end of a sentence, and is put participially :-
 could. (Mark xiv. 8.)

In the Colloquial the Past Indefinite is rendered by the plain Perfect Root, if any, or, if none, then by the Present Root, with รुए' or $\overline{\text { N/ }}{ }^{\circ}$ added ; and this holds for all persons.

Examples:-




In these cases, however, it would be just as correct to use the


(c) Pluperfect.

This tense, which expresses the idea Had....ed, is seldom or never seen in Literary Tibetan at the end of a sentence, ie. as an absolute statement. It is usually met with in an introductory or suspensory clause, and is then rendered participially with a past signification. Thus:-



And when he had considered the thing; ie. Having considered, etc. (Acts xii. 12.)

When she had thus said: i.e. Having thus said. (John xx. 14.)

Sometimes it is turned into an adjective phrase, ie. the Past Participle is put in the genitive case. Thus:-

Where the body of Jesus had lain. (John xx. 12.)
In phrases like the following it is constructed by combining $\mathbb{W} 5 \cdot \sqrt{\circ}$ with the Perfect Participle, thus making a sort of Past Infinitive.

Examples:---
 gone) to Darjeeling.
ज5ํㅇ

 bought) the horse.



When they saw that the work had been entrusted (to have been entrusted) to me.

When it does appear at the end of a sentence, it may take the form of the Perfect Root, followed by $\mathrm{q}^{\prime}$, and combined with the


CTM.


I had sent.
Thou hadst sent.

Ditto.

Sometimes, eg. in cases in which the direct mode of speech is adopted, the Pluperfect is avoided in favour of the Perfect.

Examples:-
 come) and telleth (told) the disci-

 how that he had (has) said these things unto her (me). (John xx. 18.) अँす1

The Colloquial has no special Pluperfect Tense. Any of the preceding Past Tenses belonging to it may be used (whichever is the more convenient), or even perhaps the Literary construction in $\boldsymbol{\sigma}^{\circ}{ }^{\circ}$ attached to the Perfect Root and combined with $\overline{\mathrm{N}} 5 \cdot \mathrm{y} 1$

Examples:--


 He had never been to Lhasa.
 all tenses attached to the root, and treated as part of the verb.)

In other respects the Colloquial constructions are much like the Literary.

Examples:-



When he had gone.

## (f) Future.

The Literary construction of this tense is either with the plain Future Root (if any) of the verb, or with the Present Infinitive in the Terminative case, combined with the auxiliary verbs qबुㅍar To
 The construction with $5^{-7}$ is Intensive. There is also another construction with the Present or Future Root combined with कु $^{\circ}$ and the auxiliary verb ஸ్రీల To be. This carries the meaning I am to, or $I$ have to. All these constructions, save the last, are used with all persons.

Examples:--





I am（or have）to send thee the book．
Thou art（or hast）to send me the book．

In the Colloquial the Simple Future is formed either with Wi $^{\circ}$ ．（for all persons）annexed to the Perfect Root（or probably more correctly to the Future Root），or with the Present Root combined with the Present Indicative of 凶ิఫ్ To be，the link between them being नें，気，or शें，according to rule with reference to the last letter of the Root．

Examples：－



Or：－

I shall send．

Thou wilt send．


He will send．

The other Future tenses，as known to Tibetan，are only found in connection with the Subjunctive and Conditional Moods．The first is similar to the Perfect tense．Thus ：－

「


However，with this the Simple Future may also be used．
The second is formed with the Perfect Participle combined with the Indicative Present of $\overline{\mathrm{W}} 5 \cdot \underline{\mathrm{~L}}$ ．Thus：－

Ex
Kt．



I would have sent．

Or even thus：－
EN

市动。


N．B．－The Future Root is seldom used in the Colloquial，unless，in the case of verbs like $\overline{1 / 5} \mathbf{D}^{\circ}$ ，it really lurks in the sound of $755^{\circ} \mathbf{F}^{\circ}$ as said to be sometimes used in the Future tense， and in the Participles，etc．Even in Literary Tibetan it is not met with very much．
G.-Subjunctive or Conditional.

When the sentence consists of a conditional clause dependent upon a
 or $\bar{\sigma}$ alone，the conditional clause takes the Indefinite Future in Literary REDF＇or Colloquial $\bar{W}=$ for all persons．In this Literary and Colloquial Tibetan are the same．

Examples：－






When the preceding clause is in the Past Tense, and the conditional clause signifies $I$, Thou, $H e$, etc., would.., this last clause, both in Literary and Colloquial Tibetan, takes the Perfect Participle, com-
 bered, is not quite the same in the two languages. Thus, in Literary Tibetan : -


This construction may also apparently be used when the condi-

 8); but the construction in $\widehat{\mathcal{W}} 5 \cdot \sqrt{ }$ (to which we shall come presently) is better.

The Colloquial is much the same as the above.
Examples:-



Or, for all persons:-




But，when the preceding clause is in the Past Tense，and the conditional clause signifies Would have．．．．d，then，both in Literary and Colloquial Tibetan，this last clause ought to be constructed with the Perfect Participle combined with the appropriate forms of $\overline{\chi x} 5^{\circ} \cdot \sqrt{\circ}$ in the Present Indicative．Thus，in Literary Tibetan ：－


```
                                    you. (John xiv. 2.)
~%51
```


Kt．
 घ．うิ

I would have told．

Thou wouldst have told．

The Colloquial construction is similar．
Examples：－

 or 9.9595 可

LN 容


Were it not so I would have told you．

If I had asked you，would you have corine？
 or सें
H.-Potential.

In the Colloquial this is formed by adding the auxiliary $9 \nabla^{\circ} \mathrm{ar}$ To be able，properly conjugated，to the Present Root of the verb it governs．Thus ：－

Present.

Or -

I can send.


सरेंद।
Past.

Or :--




The Literary construction with $9 \mathbb{H}^{\circ}$ is as follows:-

## Present.

| [.N' ${ }^{\prime}$ |  | $I c a n$ |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Alf: |  | Thou canst | serud. |
|  |  | He can |  |

Past.


Or:-
ER
By


(And so on as in the Colloquial.)
But the Literary construction may also be with the auxiliary giver To be able, which, unlike grave governs the Infinitive put in the Terminative case. Thus :-

Present.
 I can send.
(And so throughout.)

Past.
EN kif
$I$ could send.

Thou couldst send.






N.B.-It is important to remember that घु $^{\circ}$, both in Literary Tibetan and the Colloquial, is annexed to the Root of the verb it governs.
I.-Probability, etc.

Phrases expressive of the likelihood or possibility of doing any thing are, in Literary Tibetan, rendered by means of the auxiliary
 $=M a y b e$.
 ably I shall go.




 or सेकर्बा





I might have sent.

```
or 匀玄।
```

The auxiliary $25_{0} \|^{\prime 2}$ To be, combined with the Root or the Infinitive, put in the Terminative case, also conveys the idea of probability or likelihoor. Thus :-


जुম


 is the more correct form is somewhat uncertain.

Examples:-

I may go, or be going.



Perhaps I shall go.
(And so on, as above.)

(And so throughout.)
 (And so throughout.)

(And so throughout.)

মা
ম

I might have gone.

च



> J.-Hortative.
 To need，To be necessary，To be obliged or compelled；also where we use Must，Ought，Should，Have to．Like gुप＂al To be able，it is annexed to the Root，not to the Infinitive，and is used with or without
 be put in the Nominative or Dative（not the Agentive）case．

## Examples：－


会云




## 葡 1


 not added to the Rnot，but to the Infinitive put in the Terminative case．Thus：－


He must increase but I must decrease．（John iii．30）．

There is，however，another construction for all persons in $5^{\circ}$ or 720（Future Root of $\overline{5} 5^{\circ}$ ），added to the Infinitive in the Terminative case，or to the Root，but sometimes used by itself．

Examples:-

Let us not (i.e. we should, ought, must not) be weary in well-doing.
 (Gal. vi. 9).
g




All should hear this precept;
Having heard, should keep it well;
Whatever things we do not ourselves like;
Should not be done to others.

ロ\%

(Dulva, Vol. 5, Leaf 30).
(Tangyur).
You must exert yourself and arise;
And walk according to Buddha's teaching.

There may be said to be still another construction in in added to the Future Root (or to the Present Root if there is no Future Root) combined with 凶్య̄|r in the Present Indicative. This expresses the idea of I am to, or I have to. Thus:-

ᄃस सान





I have to send.
Thou hast to send.
He has to send.
I am to go.
Thou art to go.
He is to go.
And also another in $\mathcal{W}$ Thus:-


I have (or am) to send.
$I$ have (or am) to go.
K.-Purposive.

To express In order that, In order to, With the object of, or other similar phrase, the Infinitive is put in the Genitive case, followed, in the
 the construction being the same for all persons.

Examples:-




## ミち



 बो 25071 learn law.
L.-Precative.

In Literary Tibetan the construction is in कुणां or जन $\overline{\hat{q}=}{ }^{\circ}$, Imper-
 in the Terminative case of the Root or of the Infinitive.

Examples:-
 xviii. 8.)



If the governed verb is active and transitive, the subject is in the Agentive.
 (Matt. viii. 22.)


The Colloquial construction may also be in बुष", but it is usually
 case only the Root of the governed verb is used.

Example:-


 Colloquial way of pronouncing 책N in the pulite Literary expression

M.-Permissive.
 permitted; the governed verb being generally put in the Instrumental case of the Infinitive, and the subject in the Agentive, if connected with a Transitive verb.

Examples:-



He may send.

I was allowed to send.

(N.B.-This construction in $\boxed{A N}$, or $\left\lfloor\mathbb{N}^{\circ}\right.$, is generally used in books only.)

Sometimes the construction in $55^{\circ} \square^{\circ}$ To be suitable, or proper, is used idiomatically instead of the above.

Example :-


Whatever has been done is proper, which is the ordinary idiom for You may do as you please, or whatever you like.

The Colloquial construction is in $\tilde{\delta} \bar{\nabla} \cdot \vec{y}$ added to the Root of the governed verb. Subject in Nominative for Intransitive verbs.

Examples:-






反5


But with Transitive verbs the subject is in the Agentive.
Examples:-



Also note:-



$$
N .-O p t a t i v e .
$$

In Literary Tibetan this may be formed by putting the verb in the Terminative case of the Infinitive and adding 可, the Imperative
 jection.

Example:-
[スリ|
Another Literary construction is in $\widetilde{9 q^{\circ}}$, the Imperative of $\widetilde{\mathbb{N}^{\circ}} \bar{g}^{\circ}$
 case of the Infinitive.

Examples :-



Another Literary construction is in $\mathcal{\sigma}^{\circ} I f$, combined with the


Examples :-




In the Colloquial the Root or the Infinitive of the verb is used, followed by $\widetilde{9} \bar{y} \mid$

Examples:-


Oh that I might send.

The following Colloquialism is also heard :-



## O．－Imperative．

It will be remembered that many verbs have no distinctively
甸母 To receive，each of which has only one Root throughout ；and
 and a Perfect Root．In all such cases the Present Root is used in Literary Tibetan for the Imperative，with the addition of the Impera－ five sign हेना，देना，or＂१ेष＂，agreeably to the final letter of the Root．




Rules，it is true，are given in some grammars for the formation of the Imperative Root，but，as they are somewhat complex，and，more－ over，do not always work，it is just as easy and much safer to look up in the dictionary the Imperative Root of each individual verb，and remember it as well as one can．

Prohibitive are formed with $\mathbb{J}^{*}$（never ${ }^{-}$except in the case of




With some verbs，even though they have Imperative Roots of their own，the Present Roots，and not the Imperative Roots，are used for Prohibitions．

Examples：－
 Prohibitive \＆＇R前（pron．MAN－DO．）Do not go．





In the case of Double Imperatives, the two Roots are united by स|

Examples:-

Come and see. (John i. 39.)
In the Colloquial, if one is using the different Roots properly, the true Imperative Root, or, if none, then the Present Root. is adopted for the Imperative, as in Literary Tibetan.

Examples:-

 Don't forget.

Or, if the Colloquial has a special Root of its own, it may be used Examples:-


But if, as may often be done, one is using the Perfect Root for all moods and tenses, then that Root is also used for the Imperative, with or without डेषा", बिचां, or वेना।

If this latter Imperative sign is used at all, the Colloquial usually adopts the form रेषा।

रेबा; however, is only used in the case of stern or urgent orders or injunctions, or when talking to coolies and the like.

The Colloquial equivalents for स्यॉपासे

$5^{\circ} \cdot$ is also largely used in the Colloquial instead of ${ }^{\circ} \boldsymbol{\eta}^{\circ}$, and has a softening effect.

The following are some of the commoner Colloquial Imperatives and Prohibitive ：－

## Infinitive．

2登回 To go．

W゙W or スロッ To come．
 To bring（in hand）．




Imperative．
领 or 気気 Go．

Ar 71 Come．


जून or बानए（ ठेबा）Send．
島式N＂（ बेष ）Pour．


Negative．
अイス메 Don＇t go．
※＇5ิ5 Don＇t do．

R䓂＂お＂びNE＂Don＇t bring．



As a matter of fact，in these matters there is no rule save custom； for，according as a man is more or less educated，so he will mix up in his speech literary with vulgar forms，and the only way to learn is to keep one＇s ears open and observe what the prevailing custom is amongst different classes of Tibetans；for some will prefer to use the roots properly，while others，knowing little or nothing of them，will adopt the sound of the perfect root．So far as speaking is concerned，it will not much matter which method is adopted，unless of course one is talking to a cultured Tibetan；but，when writing in Tibetan，the roots should be used properly，and the usage with the perfect root discarded．

## VI.-The Passive Voice.

In Literary Tibetan, as a rule, the subject of a transitive active verb, or of a causative verb, is put in the agentive case, and the subject of a neuter or of a passive verb is put in the nominative or the accusative (objective) case When, however, the active verb is intransitive, the subject is put in the nominative case. Moreover, when the subject, even of a transitive verb, is a pronoun emphatically used (as, for instance, with the particle $\hat{\text { of }}$ annexed to $i t$ ), the subject is put in the nominative case. Further, when the subject is obviously the agent or instrument, as, for example, when the postposition $\mathcal{O}^{*}$ is expressly used with the objective, then it is not necessary, though quite allowable, for the subject to be put in the agentive case; in other words, it may appear in the nominative case.

Examples:-
 son is loved by the father.

 to attack.
I am not rich.




But what is a Passive Verb in Tibetan? How does the construction of the Passive Voice differ from that of the Active Voice? In a sense every Tibetan sentence, even when the verb is what we call Active, is permeated with the Passive idea. For, even such a sentence
 equally correctly The son is loved by the father; for, literally translated, it is By the father, to, or as regards the son, a loving is. It practically therefore comes to this, that, when the subject is in the agentive case, the Active Voice is intended; but, when the subject of a transitive
verb is in the nominative or objective case, the Passive Voice is intended, unless some other structural peculiarity in the sentence indicates otherwise.

The same remarks hold as regards the Colloquial. The subject in the agentive case indicates the Active Voice; the subject in the objective (with or without $\mathbb{Q}^{\circ}$ ) indicates the Passive Voice. As a matter of fact, the Tibetan language strongly favours the agentive construction; and therefore the Passive Voice, or what passes as such, should be avoided as much as possible.

The Infinitive of the Passive Voice is, in Literary Tibetan, the same as the Participle Future of the Active Verb, i.e. the Future Root with the particle, e.g $5^{\circ} \mathbf{D}^{\circ}$ To be done.

In the Colloquial it is the Root with 需, or 弐 added. These, however, may also be used in Literary Tibetan.

> VII.-Compound Verbs.

In Literary Tibetan these are of several kinds.
(a) A Substantive combined with an Active Verb.

## Example:-

 err. In such cases the Substantive remains constant, and $\overline{5} 5^{\circ} \downarrow$ is conjugated regularly as an Active 4-Rooted verb; Present Root \$5\%;

(b) An Adjective in the Terminative case with $\mathfrak{F}^{\circ}$ combined with an Active Verb.

## Example:-

 Terminative case remains constant, and the Active Verb is conjugated regularly, or according to its nature with reference to the Roots it possesses.
(c) A Principal Verb in the Terminative oase of the Infinitive with ${ }^{5}$ combined with an Active Auxiliary Verb.

Examples:-



To permit to send.
To awake ; To rouse.

In such cases the Principal Verb so formed remains constant, and the auxiliary is conjugated according to its nature.
(d) The Root of a Principal Verb pot in the Terminative case with $5^{\circ} 5^{\circ}$ Nㅓㅇ $5^{\circ}$ or $5^{\circ}$, agreeably to the final letter of the Root, combined with a Causative Verb.

Example:-

To bid to do.
In such cases the Principal Verb so formed remains constant, and the Causative is conjugated according to its nature.
(e) The Present, Perfect, or Future Infinitive of a Principal Verb put in the Instrumental case and followed by the Root of an auxiliary.

Examples:-



Or, Present Infinitive of Principal Verb in Instrumental case, declining the auxiliary regularly in $\widetilde{W}\lceil\cdot \pi 1$

Examples :-




Here the auxiliary alone is conjugated.
（ $f$ ）A Principal Verb（itself consisting of the Root of one verb added to the Root of another）combined with an Active Verb．Example－ not very idiomatic，but merely adduced by way of illustration：－

##  <br> To stroll about．

Here the two Roots remain constant，and the Active Verb is conjugated according to its nature．
（g）A Principal Verb（itself consisting of two Roots as above，com－ bined with the Root of an Active Verb in the Terminative case with $5^{\circ}$ ， $5^{\circ}$ etc．），combined with a Causative Verb．

Example：－

Here all except the Causative remains constant，and the Causative is conjugated according to its nature．

In the Colloquial the Infinitive and the Root of a verb are never put in the Terminative case as they are in Literary Tibetan．

Moreover，the Infinitive may represent the Substantive or Noun as well as the Verb．

Hence，when the Infinitive，in form，is combined with an auxiliary verb，it may be regarded either as a Substantive or as a Verb．

Thus $\overline{\mathfrak{\beta}}$ and hence the Colloquial phrase दิさr゙⿹勹巳一 may be rendered either To make a mistake or To mistake，To err．

However regarded，the tendency of Colloquial Tibetan，when a Substantive or a Verb is combined with an auxiliary verb，is to drop the Infinitive form of the verb，or the full form of the Substantive， and to use only the Root，though this is not always done．
 （literally To place in rows）is used Colloquially with $\overline{5} 5^{\circ}$ ，thus ：－


When，however，$\tilde{W} 5 \cdot 5$ To have，is the auxiliary，what looks like
 घर्यु5'g' To have $a$, or the, wish or desire, i.e. to wish or desire.

In short, the tendency to use the Root of the Principal Verb, or of the Substantive, holds, whether the auxiliary is an Active or a Causative Verb, though not where it is a verb like $\bar{W} 5^{\circ} \mathrm{E}{ }^{\circ}$ To have.

The ordinary Colloquial Honorific auxiliary verb is $4 \sigma^{\circ} 5^{\circ}$ To be pleased, good enough, so kind as. It is combined either with Infinitives, or Roots followed by 需, or bare Roots.

Examples:-



To return, or come or go back.
To desire.
VIII.-In Literary Tibetan verbs of becoming, growing, changing, turning, getting, and the like, are often expressed with the aid of
 the more modern. The noun or adjective governed by such auxiliary

 the Literary Tibetan has in these cases a special verb, e.g. चबत्ने'ص' To grow old.

The Colloquial, when it does not have a special verb, uses Räワ and does not put the noun or adjective in the Terminative case.

Example:-

IX.-Inception is expressed in Literary Tibetan with the aid of the


with or without the prefixed word ॠर्म When used as an auxiliary the construction is that described under Compound Verbs，No．VII．
 when used as an auxiliary，may be combined either with the Infinitive or the Root（generally the Root）of the Principal Verb．

Inception may also be expressed by the verb next noticed．
X．－Imminence is expressed in Literary Tibetan（amongst other ways）by the verb 맼Nㄷ To be about to，To be on the point of，To be just going to．When used as an auxiliary the Principal Verb is gene－ rally put in the Terminative case of the Infinitive．

Example：－

## ーズR

> I was about to write; or as I was about to write. (Rev. x. 4.)

In the Colloquial the same idea is expressed by means of the auxiliary verb Rর্মّ『• To go，combined with the Root of the Principal Verb．

Examples：－




Yesterday I was just about to write．
XI．－In Literary Tibetan Verbal Continuatives are expressed



> Examples:-


 hopes continually． Go on rejoicing；Rejoice always． （1 Thess．v．17．）
Pray on；keep on praying；Pray without ceasing．（ 1 Thess．$\nabla$. 18．）

Colloquially they are formed by repeating the Root of the verb， with बों，句，or 䜣 added to each Root，and combining the whole with $55^{\circ} \sqrt{r}^{\prime}$ To do，as an auxiliary．

Examples：－

 or जोता｜）

XII．－Finality or Complete Accompllishment．
In earlier Literature this is expressed by putting the verb in the Terminative case of the Infinitive with $\Gamma^{\circ}$ ，and adding 可，the Root


In later Literature the same construction is adopted，but，in－
 completed，terminated，finished，with or without the preceding adverb


The Colloquial custom is simply to add あよ to the Root of the verb，and then conjugate regularly．

Examples：－

 through．
I have read this book right through．


XIII．－Desideratives are expressed，both in Literary Tibetan and in the Colloquial，with the aid of the auxiliary verbs $R \overline{5 j} 5^{\circ}$ 元 To wish，To
 To wish，want，etc．

In Literary Tibetan $R \overline{75} \sqrt{2}$ is combined with the Infinitive of the

Principal Verb put in the Terminative case with $x^{\circ}$, e.g. ['大ignc.ax'

 Q
 the subject of course is put in the Dative case. Thus : in Literary Tibetan : -


Or, in Colloquial:-

Or:-

Or:-

Or:-

 to crave.

Example:-



XIV.-Frequentatives may be formed, not by repeating the Root of the Verb, but by the Periphrastic Present.

Example:-

Do you often go to Court (i.e.
Law Courts)?



Do you often go to Court $\rho$
XV.-Use of the Perfect Root in the Colloquial.

When the Present Root of a Verb ends in an inherent $\mathbf{K N}^{-}$(e.g.

 To live, feed, nourish), that Present Root is generally used for the Present Indicative, the Future Indicative in बी"氏్ब etc., the Present Participle, Periphrastic Present Participle, Present Infinitive, Supine and Verbal Noun. Of course, it is quite allowable, and even proper, both when speaking and writing, and especially when writing the Colloquial, to use the Roots that are assigned to particular moods and tenses for those moods and tenses. It is said, however, that as a matter of fact this is seldom or never done, at least in Vulgar Colloquial. It is also said that if, in the verbs above referred to, the
 etc., the Perfect Root should be used; and that for all other verbs the Colloquial usually adopts the Perfect Root, if any, for all moods and tenses. This is very doubtful, except perhaps in vulgar Colloquial. The idea, especially as connected with the Future Tense, probably arises from the fact that the Perfect Root often has the same, or nearly the same, sound as the Future Root. For instance, in the
 ㄲ|55 sound alike or nearly alike. In this case, the better course would be to use $9755^{\circ}$ instead of $755^{\circ}$ for the Future in $\overline{U N F}^{\circ}$ The best coarse would be to use the Roots properly, in all cases.

## CHAPTER III.

SYNTAX.

§ 39.-Most of what the student will desire to know under this head has already been dealt with in Chapter II, Etymology, in connection with each of the different parts of speech, but a brief résumé of the main rules will doubtless be appreciated.
1.-Every Tibetan sentence is ordered thus: Subject, Object, Predicate.

Examples:-


I am reading this book.


-
2.-As regards the component parts of the subject, or of the object, if the student thinks more or less backwards, he will get a very fair idea of the order in which they should be spoken or written. That order is as follows :
(a) The principal substantive; unless it is qualified by an adjective in the genitive case, in which event the adjective comes first.
(b) The adjective when in any oase other than the genitive.
(c) Participial clauses containing relative or correlative pronouns, and auxiliary to the principal substantive. These follow the rule of the adjective.
(d) The numeral, or the definite or indefinite article, and then the postposition.
3.-Adverbs precede, and interrogative pronouns, immediately precede, the verb which they qualify or with which they are connected.
4.-As regards the predicate, the verb comes last, every extension of the predicate preceding it. As regards the verb itself, the principal
verb comes first, either in the shape of an infinitive in the terminative case, or of a simple infinitive, or of a root, and then comes the active, suxiliary, or causative verb, these last alone being conjugated with reference to mood and tense.
5.-The general aspect of a Tibetan sentence, particularly if long and complex, is a series of subordinate clauses in a state of suspense, winding up with a definite statement.

Example:--




And seeing the multitudes he went up into the mountain: and when he had sat down, his disciples came unto him: and he opened his mouth and taught them, saying.

But the literal Tibetan is :-
Then by him the crowds seeing, into the mountain having gone, having sat down, the disciples into his presence having come, by him mouth having opened, to them teaching was said.

## APPENDIX．

## CONJUGATIONS．

Note．－These are intended for ready reference ；and，to economize space，pronouns have been omitted，except at the beginning．The plural is the same as the singular．They are not to be regarded as rigid，immutable expressions，but as forms which take on a moulding according to the structural necessities of the sentence．

I．－Colloquial $\bar{W} 5^{\circ} \sqrt{r}^{\circ}$ To be present ；To exist ；To be．

## Indicative Mood．

## Present．

## 



Or，with an Indefinite signification ：－
W⿵人 for all persons．

## Past．

Same as Present，context shewing Tense．
Or：－

漓

ศ⿵冂卄

Imperfect：I was existing．） Perfect ：I have existed． Pluperfect：I had existed．

Same as Present，context shewing Tense；or same as above form of Past．

## Future．

Wָन for all persons ：I shall exist．

Subjunctive and Conditional Moods．
Present：If（so and so）．．．．（then）I shall exist．

Past：If ．．．．I would exist．
 Indicative Mood．

Or：－

Perfect：If ．．．．I would have existed．

Potedtial Mood．
Present：I can exist．
欠゙
Or：－



Past：I could exist．
认ัพ
Or ：－


## Probability．

Present：Perhaps I shall exist；I may exist；It is likely，etc．


Or：－

Or：－


Past : I might exist.

Or:-

Or:-

Or:-


Hortative Mood.
Present : I must exist ; I ought to exist.

Or:-
 ※ิఫฝ!

Or vulgarly :-

Past: I ought to have existed.

Or:-

Or vulgarly : -
यूร
51
Purposive Mood.
Present and Past: That, or In order that, or So that I may or might exist.


## Imperative Mood.

Be; exist.



If Attributive only, then ${ }^{2}{ }^{2}$, or or お培


 be added according to rule.

> Precative Mood.
> Let me exist.

Permissive Mood.
I may exist; I am allowed to exist.
से
Or:-



(This last may be conjugated on, according to mood and tense.)

Optative.
Oh that I existed; Would that I existed.


## Participles.

Present: $\tilde{W}\lceil\sqrt{2} 1$
Past: 次



Existing; Being.
Existed; Been.
Having existed; having been. About to exist or be.

Periphrastic Expressions.
युโ제미 Who or which exists or existed.
सॅГ지 Which exists or existed.



Other Participial Expressions.

## Present.


WॉโN1
Wโ91 In or by existing; if, when, .... exists, exist.



Past.



## Verbal Nouns．


The existing．

Supines．




Infinitive Mood．
※゙1゙ひ1


 not be used for

（N．B ．－The forms in Rघy＜compat＞ᄌ＜compat＞ᅮ are only used when that verb is being used as a mere copula．）

Indicative Mood．
Present ：I exist；I am existing；I am present；I am．
（Same as in Colloquial．）
Or，elegantly but rather obsoletely ：－
［．జகిさ｜
$I$ exist．


Or respectfully ：－
व59


N．B．－





Past：I existed．
（Same as in Colloquial．）
Or：－

Or：－
包天号 f．a．p．I was．．．．
Or：－
 Literary 凶్ષ゙あり｜

Or：－
प्रुए चुखे
Ditto．
Imperfect：I was existing．
（Same as Present，context showing tense．）
Perfect：I have existed；Pluperfect：I had existed．
（Same as Past．）
Future：I shall exist．

Or：－－
Ray्रु：f．a．p．I shall be．．．．

## Subjunctive and Conditional Moods．

Present：If ．．．．．．．I shall exist．
（Present Root）${ }^{\cdots}{ }^{\boldsymbol{\top}}{ }^{\cdots}$（any Future form as above）．
Past：If．．．．．．I would exist．

Or ：－
$\cdots$ 〒•＂
Or：－

Or：－

$$
\cdots \text { の" ひّ }
$$

Or：－

Perfect：If．．．．I would have existed．

Or：－

Or：－


Potential Mood．
Present：I can exist．

Past ：I could exist．



Perfect：I could have existed．


Probability.
Present: Perhaps I shall exist : I may exist.

Or:-

Or:-

Past: Perhaps I would exist : I might eaist.

Or:-

Or:-

Perfect: I would have existed : I might have existed.


Or:-

Hortative Mood.
Present: I must exist ; I ought to exist.

Past: I must have existed; ought to have existed.

Purposive Mood.
Present and Past : In order that I may or might exist.


Or:-


Imperative Mood．

Precative Mood．
Let me etc．，exist．

Permissive Mood．
Present ：I am allowed to exist．
ベィ
Or：－

Past ：I was allowed to exist．

Future ：I shall be allowed to exist．

Optative Mood． Oh that I might exist．


Participles．
（Same as in Colloquial．）
Periphrastic Expressions ：－
Same as in Colloquial．Also ：－


That which exists or existed．

Other Participial Expressions．
Present：Existing．
※ँキ


Past：Having existed．

Verbal Noun．

Existing，To exist．

## Supine．

थे 5 FIF or To exist．

Infinitives．
（As in Colloquial．）Also ：－

To be about to exist．
N．B．— may never take the place of $\bar{W} 5 \cdot \sqrt{*}$ when the latter means To be present， To exist．

III．－Colloqutal 氏ิずa To be．

> Indicative Mood.
> Present. I am.
※ิळ

 or rarely ※ิす|

## Past: <br> Imperfect : <br> Perfect: <br> Pluperfect:

I was.

Future: I shall be.
स्NE' $\mid$ f. a. p. (N.B.-Also used for Indefinite Present.)
Or:-
… बीसेका


Subjunctive and Conditional Moods.
Present: If ...I shall be.
(Present Root with ${ }^{\cdots}{ }^{\top}$ f followed by either of above Future forms.)
Past: If .... I would be.


Or :-

Perfect: If . ... I would have been.

Or :-
 save that $\widetilde{J ु}^{[0}$ is confined to lst person.

Potentlal Mood.
Present: I can be.


Past: I could be.
ヘิदுघु】 ! f. a. p. context showing Tense.
Or:-

Or:-

Probability.
Present and Past : I may or might be ; Perhaps I shall or would be.


Or-

Or:-

Hortative Mood.
Present : I ought to be: I must be.

Past: I ought to have been ; must have been.

Purposive Mood.
In order that I may or might be.

Imperative Mood.

सझ़े।
Do not be.

Precative Mood.
Let me, etc. be.



## Permissive Mood.

Present : I am allowed to be.

Or:-

Past: I was allowed to be.
พิ¢
Or:-

Optative Mood.
Oh that I were : Would that I were.


## Participles.

Present:


Being.
Past :
सेすच।
Been.

Future:

Periphrastic Expressions.

जैबच or फेवचஙे।




Who or which is or was.

Who or which will be, or is or are to be.

## Other Partictpial Expressions.

## Present.



सेवすा

जेवशा
सेवसणस।



फेवचषा
ले 9 ax
सेवसㅊ
พิठचमस|

th:

Being.

Of or for being.

## Past.

$\left\{\begin{array}{c}\text { At the time of being; when, while . .am, is, } \\ \text { are. }\end{array}\right.$

By, if, when..am, is, are.
As, since, because. .am, is, are.

As..am, is, are.


As . . . . was, were.
$\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text { Having been; as, since, when, because } \\ \text {....was, were. }\end{array}\right.$

Verbal Noun.
जैवचा
.र्पेचचरे।


## Supines．

से क्च
सेवW！
जेन＇్ㅣㄴ


Infinitives．
जेवसा
चָt



To be．
To have been． \}To be about to be.



Moreover，it must always be remembered that ष्षेक ${ }^{\circ}$ ，whether Colloquial or Literary，is never used substantively，but always in connection with some noun，adjective，or substantive or auxiliary verb，into which its forms have to be moulded．
IV．－Literary 氏ิずぁ｜To be．

## Indicative Mood．

Present：I am．
जून（व）
Rそवं（㐫＂）or ocoasionally，chiefly interrogatively，येす
सेवे（すै）
Or，honorifioally ：－

可年合


Past：I was．
Same as first Present form，context showing Tense．
Or：－



Imperfect：I was being．I Same as first Present form，con－ Perfect：I have been $\quad$ text showing Tense；or same Pluperfect：I had been． as Past．
Future：I shall be．

…たRロ⿹勹巳寸（天）

Conditional and Subjunctive Moods．
Present：If ．．．．I shall be．

Past：If ．．．．I would be．
（Perfect Root）$\cdots \bar{\sigma} \cdots$ चुर
Or ：－－

Perfect：If．．．．I would have been．

Potential Moon．
Present：I can be．

Or：－


Past: I could be.

Or:-

Perfect: I could have been.

Or :-

Or:-

Or:-

Probability.
Present : I may be; Perhaps I shall be.

Or:-

Or:-

Past: I might be : Perhaps I would be.

Or:-

Perfect: I might have been: Perhaps I would have been.


Or:-


Hortative Mood.
Present : I must be ; I ought to be.


Or:-


Or:-


Or :-


f. a. p.

Past: I must have been; I ought to have been.


Or:-

Or :-

Or:-


Purposive Mood.
In order that I may or might be.

Or:-

Or:-

或き| f. a. p.

Imperative Mood.


Precative Mood.
Let me, etc. be.

Permissive Mood.
Present : I am allowed to be.

Or:-

Optative Mood.
Would that I were; Oh that I were

Verbal Noun.

Supine.

Participles.
Present: सेवया Being. ईोवच। Not being.

Past: ※ेवचा Been. अवया Not been.



## Periphrastic Expressions．







以上，気 or है।
…天身曻 or की

Who or which is or was．

Who will be，or is or are to be．

Which will be，or is or are to be．

Other Participial Expressions．

## Present．



जंबने।<br>लेबवसा

जेवसासा

At the time of being；when，while，
$\left\{\begin{array}{c}\text { as } \ldots a m, \text { is，are．} \\ \left\{\begin{array}{c}\text { Being：as，since，when，after，} \\ \text { while } \ldots \text { am，is，are．}\end{array}\right.\end{array}\right.$
$\left\{\begin{array}{c}\text { In or by being；if，when ．．am，} \\ \text { is，are．}\end{array}\right.$
Being．
Though，since，because ．．．am，is， are．
Of or for being．

## Past．

$\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text { Having been：as，since，when，} \\ \text { after ．．．was，were．}\end{array}\right.$
Because，since，when．．．was，were．

सेखान्वा
सेवस्मसN।
सेवसदए।
以ずす！

As ．．．was，were．

After，since，because，when．．was， were．

If，when ．．．was，were．

## Infinitives．

सेवच1
त्रानखेखंया



V．— ※ָโ゙で To have ；To possess．
Same as Colloquial or Literary $\widetilde{W} \mathcal{F}$ To be present，To exist， save that it is conjugated with the subject in the Dative case with or Thus：－

Indicative Mood．
Present : I have ; I possess.


To me there is．

And so on throughout．
VI．－Active，Transitive，4－rooted Colloquial verb．
वॉ5F．To send．
Roots．


## Indicative Mood．

Present：I send．
［aN．


Periphrastic Present：I am sending．



N．B．－Pronouns are henceforth omitted，except where necessary to make the construction clear．
The construction is in the Agentive，save where otherwise indicated．

Past：I sent．

## 755＇${ }^{\circ}$ f．a．p．

Or：－


－755：ローラ5


Or：－

Imperfect ：I was sending．
Same as Periphrastic Present，context showing Tense；or 55F．『゙氏すす and so on，as in Past．

Perfect：I have sent．
Same as Past．
Pluperfect ：I had sent．
Same as Past or Perfect．

Or, seldom used save at end of sentences :-



Future: I shall send.

Or:-



Or:-
न15
And so f. a. p.
Subjunctive and Conditional Moods.
Present: If ....I shall send.

Or:-

Past: If ....I would send.

$\mathrm{Or}:-$

Perfect: If ....I would have sent.

Or:-

except that $\mathscr{S ु}^{\circ}$ is usually confined to the first person, and R5미 used with the others.

Potential Mood.
Present: I can send; am able to send.

Or:-

Or:-

Past: I could send.

Perfect: I could have sent.

Or:-

Probability.
Present: Perhaps I shall send ; I may send; It is likely that I shall send.

Or:-

$\mathrm{Or}:-$

Past: Perhaps I should send; I might send.

Or:-


Or:-

Or:-

Perfect : Perhaps I would have sent; I might have sent.


Or:-

Or:-

Hortative Mood
Present: I must send: I ought to send

Or:-

Or:-
$\cdots$ aroutif
Or vulgarly :-

Also the following, sometimes used:-



Past: I must have sent; ought to have sent.

Or:--
 to the lst person, and $\mathcal{R}^{5}$ 미 used with the others.

## Purposive Mood.

Present: In order that I may send.

Past: In order that I might send.


## Imperative Mood





Precative Mood.
Let me, etc. send.


育
N.B.-The construction here is, "By me (or thee or him) a sending permit "

## Permissive Mood.

Present: I am allowed to send ; I may send.

Past: I was allowed to send; I might send.

Future: I shall be allowed to sead.

$\mathrm{Or}:-$
5स
N.B.-Here the construction is, "A sending by me is allowed, or was allowed, or will be allowed.'

The following is more Bookish :-


सिस

I may send.
Thou mayest send.
He may send.

## Optative Mood.

Present: Oh that $I$, etc. were sending, or might send.

## 

Or, better:-

Past: Oh that I, etc. had sent.

Or, better:-

Participles.
Present : नॉरूप| Sending.
Perfect: $\boldsymbol{\nabla} 5 \Gamma^{\circ} \square 1$ Sent.

Future :


Active or Periphrastic.
बা



Or the following constructions may be used ：－

|  | \} |
| :---: | :---: |
| Or：－ | \} The man who sends. |
|  |  |

## 

Or：－



Or：－ ब15 $5^{\circ}$ 习रि• केने！
The man who sent．

The man who will send or is to send．

See regarding Active and Periphrastic Participles generally， § 38，V．D．

Other Participial．Expressions．

## Present．

ম所宗｜


सारूल
नॉरेंमेसा


Sending．

Sending；Because，since，when， while．．sending．

Sending；at，for，though．．．． sending．

Though，because．．sending．

As，since．．sending．


Verbal Nouns．

\}The having sent.
$\{$ The being about to send．

## Infinitives．

Present：听有司｜


Future：${ }^{4} 55^{\circ}{ }^{\circ}$



To send．


To be about to send， or to be sent．
 To send．

Roots.
Present: $\begin{aligned} & 15 \\ & 5\end{aligned}$

N.B.-Pronouns are omitted, but the construction is in the ${ }^{-}$ Agentive, save where otherwise indicated.
 consonant, or final vowel of a verb, is also omitted.

## Indicative Mood.

Present: I send.

## बतने

 f. a. p.Or, Intensively :-

Periphrastically :-

|  <br>  |  |
| :---: | :---: |
|  |  |
|  |  |


| $I a m$ |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| Thou art | sending. |
| He is |  |

Elegant but obsolete form :-



Or:-
Same, substituting बेन for बवิ耳|
Or, Respectfully:-
ज5



Past：I sent．
$755^{\circ} 1$ f．a．p．
Or：－


『55・ロ＂※ิす
Or：－

Imperfect ：I was sending．
Same as Periphrastic Present，the context showing Tense．
Or ：－

Or：－

Perfect：I have sent．
Same as Past．
Pluperfect ：I had sent．
Same as Past，or ：－

## 

च55

Also，but seldom used，and only at end of sentences ：－



Future：I shall send．
a／55：f．a．p．
Or：－


Or：－

Or：－
aImee
And note the following ：－
ब15
I am（or have）to send．
ब／5F＇
प15気気ひす！
He is（or has）to send．

Subjunctive and Conditional Moods．
Present：If ．．．I shall send．
（Present Root）${ }^{\cdots} \boldsymbol{q}^{\cdots}$（any of the above Future forms），f．a．p．
Past ：If ．．．I would send．
Same as Present，save that in the Introductory Clause the Perfect Root is used ：or ：－

Perfect：If．．I would have sent．
Same as Past．
Or：－


Potential Mood．
Present：I can send．

Or：－

Or：－

Past ：｜I could send．


Or :--

Or:-

Or:-

Perfect : I could have sent.

Or:-

Probability.
Present : I may send; Perhaps I shall send.


Or:-

Or:-

Or:-
ब/5゙최ำ f. a. p.
Past: I might send.

Or:-
As in Past Tense, Potential Mood.
Perfect: I might have sent.

Or:-

Or:-


## Hortative.

Present: I ought to send: I must send.

Or:-

Or:-

Past: I ought to have sent.
-•aイম
Purposive Mood.
So that I may send, or might send.


Each f. a. p.

Precative Mood.
Let me, etc. send.

Or:-

Permissive Mood.
Present : I am allowed to send : I may send.

Or :-


Past: I was allowed to send : I might send.


Or:-

Future: I shall be allowed to send.

- 15 5.

Or:-

Or :-


## Optative Mood.

Present : Oh that I, etc. were sending, or might send.


Or:-

Past : Oh that I, etc. had sent.

Or:-

Imperative Mood.




 प155 सम F व
 पा5० 'ु


He who will send, or is to send. The sender.

Or the following simple construotion may be used :-

The Father who sends me.

,, ,, , sent me.

," ", ", will send me.

See generally, § 38, V. D.

Other Participial Expressions.
As in Colloquial.

Verbal Noun, or Adjective.


455*ロ'(9)
行



Sending; a or the sending.
The having sent.

The being about to send.

Sopines.



Infinitive Mood.

To send.
550.91

Past :

 To have sent.


## 4







Roots.
As in Active Verb No. VI.
N.B.-The construction throughout is in the Objective or Accosative case, with or without $\mathrm{O} \mid$

Indicative Mood.
Present: I ambeing sent.
नारेश्वेधै।

## 


Past: I was sent.



Or:-

Iniperfect: I was being sent.
Same as Present, but with adverb or other context showing Tense.
Perfect: I have been sent.
755: ํ 51 and so on.
Or, same as Past.
Or the following, though seldom used save at end of sentence :-


Pluperfect: I had been sent.
Same as Perfect.
Future : I shall be sent.
As in Active Verb No. VI.
Subjunctive and Conditional Moods.
$\left.\begin{array}{l}\text { Present : If..I shall be sent. } \\ \text { Past : If..I would be sent. } \\ \text { Perfect : If..I would have been sent. }\end{array}\right\}$ As in Active Verb No. VI.
Potential Mood.
$\left.\begin{array}{l}\text { Present : I can be sent. } \\ \text { Past : I could be sent. } \\ \text { Perfect : I could have been sent. }\end{array}\right\}$ As in Active Verb No. VI.
Probability.
Present : I may perhaps be sent. Past: I might
\} As in Active Verb No. Vl.

## Hortative Mood.

Present : I ought to be sent; I must be sent.

Or:-

Or:-

Or:-

Past: I ought to have been sent.

Or:-

Purposive Mood.
Present : In order that I may be sent. Past : In order that I might be sent.

As in Active Verb No. VI.

Imperative Mood.


Do not be sent.

Precative Mood.


Permissive Mood.
Present : I am allowed to be sent.


And so on conjugating $\tilde{\omega^{\prime}} \cdot \underline{\square} \cdot$ regularly.
Or :-

Optative Moot.
Present: Oh that I were being sent.

Or, better :-
बाॅГᄃ.
Past: Oh that I had been sent.

Or, better :-
ஏ5Гㅁ.
Participles.
Present : B

Past : $\quad$ a5「.a 1 Been sent.


Future:


> Periphrastic.


Or the following simple construction may be used :-

## 

Or:-

## 



Or:-


The man who is or was sent by $m e$.

Other Participial Expressions.

56玉.31

955-78!
-5E.g世1
55EMANE1

45561

55E®M2
-5E. $\underbrace{\circ}$

न5:-মী)

Being sent, having been sent.
Because, since, when..was or were sent.


If, when, though..was or were sent.
$\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text { As, since, because. . was or were } \\ \text { sent ; having been sent. }\end{array}\right.$
Because, though..was or were sent.

Supines.


# Verbal Nouns． 

－ 5 5ローズ

वाॅ户
450．⿹勹巳．

The being sent．
The having been sent．

The being about to be sent．

Infinitive Mood．

## 




The same or ：－


To be sent．

To be about to be sent．

IX．－Active，one－rooted Colloquial Verb お気に】｜To see． Root throughout お気ご1

N．B．－The construction is in the Agentive，except where other－ wise indicated．

Indicative Mood．
Present：I see．
बर्थूं। f．a．p．
Periphrastic：I am seeing．



Past：I saw．

＊N．B．—

Or：－



Imperfect：I was seeing．
Same as Periphrastic Present，context showing Tense．
Perfect ：I have seen．
Same as Past．
Pluperfect：I had seen．
Same as Past or Perfect．
Or，seldom used save at end of sentence ：－

Future：I shall see．
お気に「ごだ1 f．a．p．
Or：－

Note also the following ：－

And so on．
Also ：－
 And so f．a．p．

Subjunctive and Conditional Moods．
Present：If．．I shall see．

Or：－

Past：If．．I would see．


Or:-

Perfect : If..I would have seen.

Or:-

Potential Mood.


Probability.
Present : Perhaps I shall see : I may see.
Same as in $\bar{\dagger} \check{\lceil }\lceil\cdot \square \mid$ To send, No. VI.
Past: Perhaps I would see: I might see.

Or:-

Or:-

Or:-

Or:-
Perfect : Perhaps I would or might have seen.

Or:-

Or:-

Hortative.
Present : I ought to see: I must see.


Or:-

Or:-

Or:-
 And so on.
Or:-

And so, f. a. p.
Past : I ought to have seen; must have seen.


Or:-

Purposive Mood.
Present and Past: In order that I may or might see.


Imperative Mood.


See.
Do not see.

Precative Mood.

Let me, etc. see.

Permissive Mood.
Present : I am allowed to see; I may see.

$\mathrm{Or}:-$


And so on, conjugating रेकेषाध regularly.
The following is more Bookish :-


## Optative Mood.

Present and Past : Oh that I were seeing, or had seen.


Participles.


Perfect :

Seen.

Future :


About to see.

Active, Periphrastic, or Substantive.
 No. VI.

Other Participial Expressions.

## Present.

浭㐫



सर्वर-बत|
ม

बत्वएवำ।


Seeing.
Seeing; because, since, when, while. .am, is, or are seeing.

Seeing; at, for, though..am, is, or are seeing.
$\} A s$, since. . am, is or are seeing.


Though seeing.
If, when, though...am, is or are seeing.

## Past.











$\}$ Having seen.
Seen; because, since, when..was or were seen.
)
\}Having seen.
If, when, though..was or were seen.

Because, though..was or were seen.


## Supines.



Infinitive Mood.



X.-Neuter, One-Rooted Colloquial Verb $5 \mathbb{A l}\{\boldsymbol{a} \mid$ To be glad, To rejoice.

$$
\text { Root } \mathcal{I} \mathbb{R} \mid \text { throughout. }
$$






The construction throughout is in the Nominative，save that in
 No．IX．
 To rejoice．

Root $\{\mathbb{A} \mid$ throughout．
N．B．－The construction is in the Nominative case，except where otherwise indicated．The 就気筞可｜is omitted．

Indicative Mood．
Present：I am glad：I rejoice．
5AR｜f．a．p．
Or，intensively ：－

Periphrastic：I am rejoicing．



Or：－

Or：－
54ヶロッベจ｜


Or：－

Or，seldom used now ：－



Past: I rejoiced: I was glad.

Or:-

Or:-

Imperfect: I was rejoicing.
Same as Present, context indicating Tense.
Perfect: I have rejoiced.
Same as Past.
Pluperfect: I had rejoiced.

Or, though not common :-

Future : I shall rejoice: I shall be glad.
₹पीर्थिए। f. a. p.
Or:-

Or:-

And so on.
Subjunctive and Conditional Moons.
Present: If..I shall rejoice.

Or :-


Or:-

Past : If ..I would rejoice.

Or:-

Perfect : If ..I would have rejoiced.


Potential Mood.
Present: I can rejoice or be glad.

f. a. p.

Or:-

Or:-

Past: I could rejoice.
Same as Present.
Or:-

Or:-

Or:-

Or:-

Perfect: I could have rejoiced.
5मी

Or ：－

Or：－


Or：－－

Probability．
Present ：Perhaps I shall rejoice ：I may rejoice．


Or：－

Or：－

f．a．p．
Or：－ 5 AR・ロエ・式ち1

Or：－


Past：Perhaps I would or might rejoice．


Perfect：Perhaps I would or might have rejoiced． 5ar：

Hortative Mood．
Present：I ought to rejoice ；I must rejoice．

Or：－
ラARロロデ51 f．a．p．
Past：I ought to have rejoiced．


## Purposive.

Present: In order that I may rejoice.
5AR \&R $\operatorname{Sa}^{\circ}$
Or:-

Or:-

Or:-

Past: In order that I might rejoice.
Same as first three forms of Present.
Or:-

Precative Mood.
Let me, etc. rejoice.

Or:-

Or:-

Or:-

Or:-

f. a. p.
f. a. p.

Permissive Mood.
Present : I am allowed to rejoice; I may rejoice.

Past:I was allowed to rejoice; I might rejoice.


## Optative Mood.

Oh that I were glad or rejoicing.
5419.

Or:-

Or:-


Imperative.

Or:-

Or:-


Or:-

Ór:-

Or:-


Rejoice, Be glad.

Do not rejoice. Be not glad.

Participles.
Present:

|  | Rejoicin |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | Rejoiced. |




Active, Periphrastic, or Substantive.

## 5AR"समव







Other Participial Expressions.
Present.


## Past.

 and あよ5 taking $5^{\circ}$ instead of श्टे।

Verbal Noun or Adjective.




Rejoicing; A, or the rejoicing.
The having rejoiced
The being about to rejoice.

## Supines.

## ERRANT

Or:-
SARI


Infinitive Mood.



XII.—Passive 4 Rooted, Literary Verb aiffeax To be sent.
N.B.-The construction throughout is in the Objective or Dative case in $\mathrm{N} \mid$

Otherwise it is the same as the Active Literary Verb $\overline{\operatorname{lin}}{ }^{\circ}$ To send, No. VII. as far as and including the Potential Mood.

## Hortative Mood.

Present : I ought to be sent ; I must be sent.


Or:-

Past: I ought to have been sent.


Then it is again similar to Verb No．VII．as far as and inoluding the Optative Mood．

## Imperative Mood．

|  |
| :---: |
|  |  |
|  |  |

Be sent．

Do not be sent．

Partiotplims．


구ㅁㅣㅣ






析
Future：
बाने

析到

Been sent．

Having been sent．

About to be sent．

## Periphrastic.








Participial Expressions.
Same as in Colloquial Passive Verb 絾需 To be sent, No. VIII.

## Supines.



Verbal Nouns.


## Infinitive Mood．



पॉ5－वx：



To be sent．

To have been sent．

XIII．－Active，2－Rooted Colloquial Verb Rर्גָㅁ］To go

Roots．
Present ：
Qä！
Perfect：
स̃5 or स्रेवा
Future： Qaั！

N．B．－The construction throughout is in the Nominative case．

Indicative Mood．
Present：Jgo．
R文｜f．a．p．
Periphrastic：I am going．
R习习习习习习习1


Past：I wert．
सेट or ₹⿹\zh26龴⿵人一 f．a．p．

## Or:- <br> 




Or:-
Е्रेवचひ్యి and so on.
Imperfect: I was going.
Same as Periphrastic Present, context showing Tense.
Perfect: I have gone.
Same as Past.
Pluperfect: I had gone.
Same as Past.
Or, seldom used save at end of sentences :-

Or:-

Future : I shall go.
Qर्गय议•| f. a.p.
Or:-

Or:-
 f. a. p.

Or:-


Subjunctive and Conditional Moods.
Present: If...I shall go.


Or：－

Past：If ．．．I would go．
（Perfect Root）．．．Same as Present，context indicating Tense． Or ：－

Perfect：If ．．．I would have gone．

Or：－

Or：－

Potential Mood．
Present：I can go．

Or：－

Or：－

Past：I could go．

Perfect：I could have gone．

Or：－
R习习习习习习习习1 f．ac．
Probability．
Present：Perhaps I shall go ；I may go．


Or:-

Or:-

Or:-

Past: Perhaps I might go.

Or:-

Or:--

Perfect: Perhaps I might have gone.

Or:-

Or:-

Hortative Mood.
Present: I ought to go; I must go.

Or:-

Or:-

Or vulgarly :-

$\mathrm{Or}:-$

Or:-
Qस्युनर्तोंजेखा and so on.

Past：I ought to have gone．

Or：－

Purposive Mood．
Present ：In order that，or so that，I may go．

Past ：In order that，or so that，I might go．

Imperative Mood．
तौर（बิण्ग）।

気可（（ेग）｜
FR㐫｜（Pronounced Män－do）Do not go．
Precative Mood．

Let me，etc．go．
Permissive Mood．
Present：I am allowed to go ：I may go．
Qर्येंकेणा f．a．p．
Or：－

（N．B．－Other Tenses may be formed by conjugating సॅनाय｜ regularly．） Optative Mood．
Present：Oh that，or would that，I were going．

Or：－

f．a．p．

Past：Oh that，or would that，I had gone．

Or：－
 （N．B．－The expressions in $\bar{q}^{\boldsymbol{q}} \|$ are not much used in Colloquial， being rather Literary．）

## Particirles．

| Present： | Q ${ }_{\text {－}}$（1） | Going． |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Perfoct ： | ड⿹⿺㇉一𧰨丶万山1 | Gone． |
|  | रิॅら1 |  |
|  | 式込年1 |  |
|  |  |  |
| Com．Perfect ： |  | Having gone． |

Future：

Active，Periphrastic，or Substantive．


## Other Participial Expressions．


 take 引े

> Spines.


Verbal Nouns or Adjectives．

の筧区（気）
Q－께


Q第守（気）
\}Going; a or the going.

The having gone．

The being about to go．

Infinitive Mood．
Present：Rर्पनव｜
To go．
ㅊN二・ロ or 气्युब『।




To be about to go．

Roots.

N.B. -The construction throughout is in the Nominative case.

Indicative Mood.
Present: I go.
R馬自 f. a. $p$.
Periphrastic: I am going.



$\mathrm{Or}:-$

Past: I went.
से
Or:-

f. a. p.

Or:-
सतथ वस्शेकर्वा

से
$\mathrm{Or}:-$

Imperfect : I was going.
Same as Periphrastic Present, context showing Tense.
Or:-

Or:-


Perfect: I have gone.
Same as Past.
Pluperfect: I had gone.
Same as Past.
Or, seldom used save at end of sentence:-

Or:-

Future: I shall go.

Or:-

Or:-

Subjunctive and Conditional Moods.
Present: If ...I shall go.
(Present Root) ${ }^{\cdots} \bar{\Phi} \quad$ (any simple Future).
Past: If...I would go.
 Or, same as Present.
Perfect: If... I would have gone.


Potential Mood.
Same as Potential Mood in Literary $4 \overline{5} 5 \square$ To send, No. VII using Root $\{$ 亦| throughout.

Probability.
Present : Perhaps I shall go ; I may go.

Or:-


Or:-

Past: Perhaps I would go ; I might go.


Perfect: Perhaps I would have gone; I might have gone.


Hortative Mood.
Similar to Litorary

## Purposive Mood.




Precative Mood.

Or:-

Or:-


Let me, etc., go.

Permissive and Optative Mood.
As in Literary $\overline{\operatorname{aj}} \mathrm{F}$ | To send, No. VII, keeping the construction in the Nominative case and using the appropriate roots.

## Imperative.

त्रे।
$\mathrm{Or}:-$

Or:--

Or:-
Q

Go, Begone.


Do not go.

Participles.
Present: $\quad$ Q.⿹\zh26灬|

Perfect:

Going.
$\}$ Gone.


Future :


Q
Qर्मेश
Active or Periphrastic or Substantive.
Same as in Colloquial No. XIII, save for the following :-






He who or that which will go, or is to go.

Participial Expressions.
Same as in Colloquial No. XIII.

## Verbal Nouns.



Going ; $a$ or the going.


Sopines.


Q
Q
Q

Infinitive Mood.
Present: वर्नोमा To go.

त्राँ or द्रोवचा
Perfect :



To have gone.


XV．－Two－rooted Literary Verb Ry్yial To become，To be changed，To be turned，To grow，etc．

N．B．－This verb is often used as an Auxiliary verb，and the way in，and extent to which，it is so employed，is best seen in the other Literary Conjugations．It is purely classical． The construction here is in the Nominative case．

Roots．

Imperative：जुरा but sometimes र्पेरा
Indicative Mood．
Present：I become．

Periphrastic：I am becoming．



Past：I became．
或区 or 牙天范｜f．a．p．
Or：－
प्रुस पజेव व̄।



Imperfect : I was becoming.
Same as Periphrastic Present, context showing Tense.
Or:-

Or:-

Perfect : I have become.
Same as Past.
Pluperfect: I had become.
Same as Past.
Or, though seldom used :-

Or:-

Future: I shall become.

Or:-

Subjunctive and Conditional Moods.
Present: If...I shall become.
(Present Root) ${ }^{\cdots}{ }^{-}{ }^{\circ}$ (simple Future).
Past: If...I would become.

Or :-

Perfect: If...I would have become.

Potential Mood, Probabllity, Hortative Mood.
(As in Literary Verb $\{\mathbb{A} \mathbb{R} \exists \mid$ To be glad. No. XI.)

## Purposive Mood．

Present：So that I may become．


Past：So that I might become．
 Precative Mood．

Or：－

$\{$ Let me，etc．become．

Permissive and Optative Moods．
 tion in the Nominative Case，and using the appropriate Roots．

Imperative Mood．

Or：－


Or：－


Become．

Do not become．

Participles．

| Present ： |  | Becoming． |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | ㅁ্ᅥ제1 |  |
| Perfect： |  | Become． |
|  | 或「ごすい1 |  |



Periphrastic Expressions.










$\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text { He who or that which becomes. } \\ \text { The becomer. }\end{array}\right.$


Other Participial Expressions.



Supines.








$\{$ For becoming.
Verbal Nouns.
Becoming. $A$ or the becoming. The having become.

The being about to become.

Infinitive Mood.

Present : R⿹ㅣㄴ믹






To become.

To have become.

To be about to become.
 etc.
N.B.-The construction is in the Agentrive case, save where otherwise indicated.

Roots.
Present : 5. 51 Perfect: 5N| Future: 5| Imperative:

 To send，No．VI，up to and including the Optative Mood，save for the following ：－

Imperative Mood．


ज్खेx वेश1
डोर अंगा



Do not do．

N．B．－The form 5i5 Do is probably really 5 N ！
Participees．


Active or Periphrastic Expressions．
As in Colloquial $4 \pi 5 \square^{\circ}$ To send No．VI．
Other Participial Expressions．
Present．


玉울
ड़न
$\}$ Doing．
Because，since，when，while．． doing．


## Past．

5ボら1
5सFIN
5ボだMN1

Having done．

Because，since，when．．dsd，or was done，or had done．

And so on，as in Colloquial anfin To send，No．VI．

Supines，and Verbal Nouns and Infinitive Mood．
As in Colloquial बIだロ・ To send，No．VI．
 make，etc．

Roots．
$\left.\begin{array}{l}\text { Present ：} \\ \text { Perfect ：} \\ \text { Future：}\end{array}\right\}$ As in Active Colloquial Verb，No．XVI．
Imperative ：స్रूस（ वेषा）।
Indicative Mood．
Present：I do；I make．

Intensive：I do do ：I do make．


Periphrastic：lam making．



Or，elegantly，but seldom used ：－

केन ठे

Past：I made．
$5^{\text {an k }}$
Or：－

## 




Or：－

Imperfect ：I was making．
Same as Periphrastic Present，context showing Tense．
Or：－

Or：－

Or：－

Perfect：I have made．
Same as Past．
Pluperfect：I had made．
Same as Past．
Or：－

Or：－

Or，though seldom used ：－

Future：I shall make．
⿹勹巳े 『x．gरी f．a．p．
Or：－

Or：－

Or：－
521 f．a．p．

Subuunctive and Conditional Moods．
Present ：If．．．I shall make．


The other Moods as in the same Verb No. VII, down to and inoluding the Optative Mood, with appropriate Roots, eto.

Imperative Mood.

โूल (9ิๆ) )


बझ़ोर।




Partioliples.

## Active or Periphrastic Partioiples．

| केनसमी |
| :---: |
| छेश凶ひ1 |
|  |


चुसासी
ज゙ロそう।


ず

He who or that which makes or does ：the maker or doer．

He who or that which made or did．

Or the following simple construction may be used ：－


 is to make，the box．

Other Participial Expressions．
As in Colloquial $\mathfrak{9}\left\lceil^{\circ} \mathrm{J} \mid\right.$ To make，No．XVI．

## Supines．



Verbal Nouns．


Making ；a or the making．
The having made．

The being about to make．

Infinitive Mood．
Present ：${ }_{3} 5 \times 11$
To make．
5N゙ひ1
5ズぶよ・ロ1






Future ：


－${ }^{\circ} 1$


 सेनुस｜To be made，To be done，etc．

Conjugated on the lines of Passive Colloquial Verb afin ． To be sent，No．VIII，with the appropriate Roots，etc．

XIX．—Passive，4－Rooted Literary Verb 5．a $\mid$ To be made，To be done＇，etc．

Conjugated on the lines of Passive Literary Verb anjiaxigi To be sent，No．XII，as far as，and including，the Compound Perfect of the Participles，and with the appropriate Roots，etc．Then ：－

## Partioiples．

|  |  |
| :---: | :---: |
|  |  |
|  | About to be made or done． |
|  |  |
| $5 \cdot 81$ |  |

Other Participial Expressions．
Present．


And so on as in Literary Active，No．XVII．

## Past．

5बらे।
5제제N｜

Having been made or done．
$\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text { Because，since，when } \ldots \text { is or was } \\ \text { made or done．}\end{array}\right.$
And so on as in Literary Aotive，No．XVII．

## Supinms．



Verbal Noun．
よa゙（す）
$\left\{\begin{array}{c}\text { Being made or done．} \\ \text { being made or done．}\end{array}\right.$ or the

## Infinitive Mood．






 done，etc．

In conjugating this Verb，${ }^{2} \mathbf{F}^{\circ} \mathbb{1} 5^{\circ}$ remains constant throughout，




But then the meaning is,-To become made or done, To be about to become made or done.

## ERRATA ET CORRIGENDA.

Page 4, line 1 at bottom. For $\widetilde{₹}$
read $\bar{\xi}$


Page 89, line 10 from bottom. For Żं HyI read Whys.


153, , 10 ,. ,, Delete or between जु̃ and Ex.
169, ,, l at top ,, hath read that.


306, , 6 ,, bottom. , दूर्येचरें " बर्बेंमरू

347, last line. Delete second and third dot between 755

,, 351, line 11 from bottom. Read " might be sent."
" 371, " 11 ,. " Delete " बेषा or बेमा or रेषा|" and re-insert after "Particle" on next previous line.


"386, " 8 ", " Fें $\quad, \quad$ रें and for

## CORRIGENDA-(continued).

Page 66 (middle of page).
Delete the words "some uncertainty," and substitute the words " personal knowledge and is certain."
Also delete the word "almost."
Also delete the words " at all," and substitute the word "exactly."
Also delete the words "only hazarding the statement," and substitute the words "speaking on information."

Page 207 (bottom of page).
Delete the words "an emphatic or positive statement is intended," and substitute the words "the speaker expresses knowledge derived from information."
After the words " No there is not," insert the words " (so I am informed)."
Then add the following:-
" $\left\{\int_{0} \| \mid\right.$ is used when the speaker expresses personal knowledge and certainty. Thus:-


